

FIRST LATIN GRAMMAR

AND

EXERCISES,

ON

OLLENDORFF'S METHOD.

BY

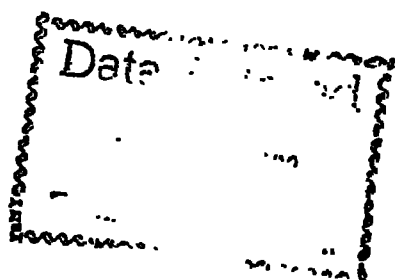
WILLIAM HENRY PINNOCK,

CORPUS CHRISTI COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE.

LONDON:

WHITTAKER AND CO. AVE MARIA LANE.

1844.



TO THE REV. THE
MASTER, AND FELLOWS,
&c. &c. &c.
OF 'CORPUS CHRISTI COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE,
THIS SERIES OF WORKS
Is inscribed,
AS A VERY HUMBLE, BUT A SINCERE TRIBUTE OF
RESPECT AND ESTEEM,
BY THEIR OBLIGED AND FAITHFUL SERVANT,
WILLIAM HENRY PINNOCK.

P R E F A C E.

It is admitted beyond all question, and every-day experience bears testimony to the fact, that the classic languages of Greece and Rome have become a most essential—the chief ingredient in the education of a gentleman. Not that he will make use of these tongues in the intercourse of his after-life; but because the mere learning of these languages has been found to be the best discipline for bringing out the various faculties of the youthful mind,—the simplest and surest method of awakening and maturing those intellectual powers which give rank and character to the future man. Beyond this, the acquaintance that he derives with those master-works of mind and action, so admirably and so strikingly portrayed in Grecian and Roman literature, cannot fail to stamp upon his mind such images of the noble and the grand, as will exercise a high and exalted influence over the inward feelings of the heart, and the outward bearing of his

growing years. Every attempt, therefore, to facilitate the acquirement of either of these languages, cannot but in some degree be welcome; but how far satisfactory, experience and an indulgent public, can alone determine.—Now to the work before us.

This development of the structure of the Latin language has long been put in practice by the Author among his own pupils with considerable advantage. Etymological analysis,—continued repetition and explanation, with questions of *examination* and *inquiry*, so critical and diversified as to establish a sound knowledge of the language as it now exists in classic authors, and *arranged in close contiguity* with the parts they analyse, a point of great importance for practical application,—are some of its most important features. This *questioning* is carried out in all our public schools and universities, and the best modern editions of classic authors are not considered complete for the purposes of education without the appendage of examinatory questions;—how much more necessary, therefore, must it be in our introductory works on these important subjects! And further: the mathematical development here pursued has been applied most satisfactorily and successfully to the German and French languages by Mr. OLLENDORFF, whose celebrity in this department has obtained for him the flattering appellation of the “*Euclid*” in German.

In respect to the Latin tongue, every classic must be aware of the uncertain and inaccurate data left to

us from antiquity of its early structure. A mixture of Oscan, Umbrian, and Etruscan elements growing into a language by the accretion of the various dialects of the surrounding people, as they became amalgamated with the Roman empire, produced the rough material which the fascinating elegance of Grecian literature in the Augustan age moulded into something like a finished tongue. Though our knowledge of its actual growth and progress is imperfect, yet comparative philology, aided by the deep research of German scholars, has done much in explaining away many of the difficulties that encumbered its development; but till all the omissions and deficiencies have been accurately supplied,—till the abbreviations and the assimilation of literal elements have been lucidly explained, the etymological structure of the language cannot be thoroughly understood. In fact, the Latin language is a system of *abbreviation* from beginning to end; the whole process of mutilation by aphæresis and syncope, by apocope and crasis, by antithesis and metathesis, has been at work unchecked to destroy the analogy of its structural development. There is not a part of speech,—there is not a declension, not a conjugation, that is free from this reproach. The letter *r* is continually usurping the place of *s*¹; as *arbor* for *arbos*, *Valerius* for *Valesius*, *Papirius* for

¹ In multis verbis, in quo antiqui dicebant *s*, postea dictum *r*.—*Varro de Ling. Lat.* vii. 26.

Papirius²; as well for *d*: as in *auris*, from aud-io; *l* also for *d*: as *sella*, from sedco; *b* for *p*: as *bitumen* for pitumen, from pituita; and a host of others familiar to every scholar, without touching upon the derivations from the Greek, such as *fera*, from *θηρ*; *ambo*, from *αμφω*; *hortus*, from *χορτος*; *equus*, from *ἵππος*; &c.

Again, by ellipsis at the beginning, middle, or end, we find *nec* for *neque*, *imus* for *infimus*, *otium* for *optium*, *summus* for *supremus*, *hodie* for *hoc-die*, *malo* and *mauolo* for *magis-volo*, *nolo* for *non-volo*, *videlicet* for *videre-licet*, and so on; not omitting even proper names, which we learn from Varro constantly in colloquialism suffered syncopation: as *Artemas* for *Artemidorus*³. The great evil, however, arose from the practice of *writing* these abbreviations, so destructive of all analogy, rather than give to each word its full complement of letters; *etymology* gave way to a careless and negligent pronunciation,—sense yielded to sound. Augustus himself cared not for his orthography; he wrote just as he spoke.

On the subject of *declension*, where can we find uniformity? We will take one case for an example of existing deficiencies.—The ancient genitives uniformly ended

² Cicero forcibly shows this practice in his *ad Famil.* ix. 21.

³ These practices occur in our own language in familiar conversation to a very great extent: as *'tis* for *it is*, *I'll* for *I will*, *won't* for *will not*, *don't* for *do not*, *ha'-penny* for *half-penny*, *Chomley* for *Cholmondeley*, *Cokoun* for *Colquhoun*; and in provincialisms particularly: *Da'entry* for *Daventry*, *Charvil* for *Chalk-field*, &c.

in *s*; in the first declension we find *familias* for *familie* (*pater-familias*), *auras* for *auræ* (*Virg.*), *terras* for *terræ* (*Nævius ap. Prisc. 6*); in the second declension, *solus*, *uter*, and other adjectives make *-ius*: as *solius*, *utrius* (*solæ* for the fem. occurs in *Corn. Nepos*); in the third declension all make *is*, in the fourth declension *ūs* is the contraction of *-uis*: as *graduis*, *gradūs*; in the fifth declension many of its nouns have been transferred to the third declension, which makes *is*: as (from *fames*) *famei* is found for *famis*, *plebi* and *plebei* for *plebis* (*tribunus plebei*, *Livy*): the pronouns too were formerly in *s*: as *ego*, gen. *mis* (now *mei*), *tu*, gen. *tis* (now *tui*); *ille* makes *ill-ius*, *is* makes *eius* (*ejus*), and *quis*, *quius* (*ejus. c* for *q*, *j* for *i*).—Lastly, on *conjugation*. The third person singular uniformly ends in *t*, but the other persons are perfectly anomalous; take the *first person singular* for an illustration. The generality of these end in *m*: the present indicative in *m* still exists, in *sum* and *inquam*, the rest have lost the *m*; the first future indicative we have found all in *bo* (*Scheller*); we find in *Terence*, *Eun. iv. 7, 35*, *scibis* of the fourth conjugation for *scies*, and the futures in *ro* and the perfect in *i* are still without the *m*. To reconcile all these anomalous cases is a task of great difficulty,—is impossible; and those only who have attempted it can appreciate the labour of explaining them. This may in some measure account for the greater partiality exhibited in our universities for the *Greek*,

which is free from much of the incongruity encumbering the threshold of Latin learning. But we must conclude; and in expressing our acknowledgments to the many German and English scholars who have attempted some exposition of the great difficulties of philology generally, and which have been of such material assistance in the following development of the Latin language, we cannot pass without especial mention of the "*Novo Cratylus*" of Mr. Donaldson, which we strongly recommend to the perusal of every classic who has a taste for the intrinsic beauties of those learned tongues.

Corpus Christi College,
Cambridge.

CONTENTS.

LESSON	PAGE
1. <i>Case and Declension of Nouns</i>	1
2. <i>Conjugations of Verbs (3rd persons)</i>	5
3. <i>First Declension of Nouns</i>	10
<i>First Conjugation of Verbs (words in opposition).</i>	
4. <i>Second Declension of Nouns</i>	14
<i>Second Conjugation of Verbs.</i>	
<i>(Agreement of Adjectives). (Place of the Genitives).</i>	
5. <i>Third Declension of Nouns</i>	19
<i>Third Conjugation of Verbs (Adjectives).</i>	
6. <i>Fourth Declension of Nouns</i>	24
<i>Fourth Conjugation of Verbs (Infinitive mood as a Substantive).</i>	
7. <i>Fifth Declension of Nouns</i>	27
<i>Comparison of Adjectives (than after comparatives).</i>	
8. <i>The Five Declensions (Recapitulation)</i>	33
9. <i>Declension of Adjectives (Recapitulation)</i>	36
<i>Tenses of Verbs.</i>	
10. <i>Pronouns</i>	40
<i>Indicative Mood (Adjectives followed by a Genitive).</i>	
11. <i>First and Second Persons of Verbs</i>	45
12. <i>Imperative Mood</i>	49
<i>Pronoun Ille (Nouns of Time and Place).</i>	
13. <i>Subjunctive and Potential Moods</i>	53
<i>Pronoun Qui. (To express a purpose.)—(Sequence of Tenses).</i>	
14. <i>The Verb esse, to be</i>	57
<i>Indefinite Pronouns.</i>	
15. <i>Subjunctive of esse</i>	60
<i>Irregular Comparatives (Est with a Genitive).</i>	

LESSON	PAGE
16. The Verb <i>esse</i>	63
(<i>First and Second Persons, and Imperative</i>)— <i>Est</i> with a Neuter Pronoun).	
17. Infinitive Mood	66
<i>Price in the Genitive or Ablative.</i>	
18. <i>Supines</i>	70
19. <i>Participles</i> . (<i>Perfect or Past in -tus, and Future in -rus</i>)— (to express a purpose three ways)	73
20. <i>Participles</i> (<i>Present and Future in -dus</i>)—(<i>Ablative Absolute</i>). ..	76
21. <i>Participle in -dus</i> (in Agreement)—(<i>Duty and Necessity</i>)....	80
22. <i>Duty or Necessity</i>	83
23. <i>Gerunds</i> (declined as a Noun)	85
24. <i>Passive Verbs</i>	88
<i>Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses. (Agent, Manner, and Instrument in the Ablative).</i>	
25. <i>Passive Verbs</i> (continued).....	93
<i>Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses (First and Second Persons).</i>	
26. <i>Passive Verbs</i> (continued).....	97
<i>Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses.</i>	
27. <i>Passive Verbs</i> (continued)—(<i>Imperative and Infinitive Moods</i>). ..	101
28. <i>Deponent Verbs</i> (their government)	105
29. <i>Irregular Verbs</i> (<i>Possum</i>)—(<i>Est</i> and a dative)	107
30. <i>Irregular Verbs</i> (continued)—(<i>Volo, Nolo, Malo</i>)	110
31. <i>Irregular Verbs</i> (continued)—(<i>Fero and Feror</i>).....	114
<i>A Consequence, Purpose, Negatives.</i>	
32. <i>Irregular Verbs</i> (continued)—(<i>Edo, Fio, Eo</i>)	119
33. <i>Impersonal Verbs</i> (their government).....	123
34. <i>Impersonal Verbs</i> (continued)—(their government).....	127
35. <i>Prepositions</i> (with <i>Accusative</i>)	129
36. <i>Prepositions</i> (with <i>Accusative</i>)—(continued)	131
37. <i>Prepositions</i> (with <i>Ablative</i>)	132
38. <i>Prepositions</i> (with <i>Ablative</i>)—(continued)	133
39. <i>Prepositions</i> (with <i>Accusative and Ablative</i>)	134
40. <i>Adverbs and Conjunctions</i> (<i>quin, nonne, num</i>)	135
<i>Questions Recapitulatory</i>	137

FIRST
LATIN GRAMMAR
AND
EXERCISES.

LESSON 1.

CASE AND DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

1. THERE are in all languages *three* persons :
The person who *speaks*, which is called the *first* person ;
The person *spoken to*, which is called the *second* person ;
The person or thing *spoken of*, which is called the *third* person.
2. All *nouns* are of the *third* person ; and they have *verbs* to agree with them always in the *same* person.
3. In the use of nouns and verbs in *English*, we place before them certain words ; as
A ¹ man ; *the* man ; *of a* man ; *of the* man ; &c.
I love ; *I did* love ; *I have* loved ; *I shall* love ; &c.

¹ *A* and *the* are called *articles* in English. There are no articles in *Latin*.

4. The Romans did not place such words *before* their nouns and verbs, but changed the *endings* of them; as

A man, *homo*; of a man, *homīnis*; to a man, *homīni*; &c.

I love, *amo*; I did love, *amābam*; I have loved, *amāvi*; &c.

5. This change in nouns is called **DECLENSION**:
The change in verbs is called **CONJUGATION**.

6. The *part* of a word *not* changed is called the *root*, or *base* of the word.

7. Nouns in Latin, bear in mind,
Five different ways are found *declined*;
And add to all their *roots* or *bases*,
Six endings, which are called their **CASES**².

8. The *five declensions* are distinguished by the ending of the *genitive* case.

9. Here are the *endings* of the several *genitives* of the five declensions:—

The	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	5th
ends in	<i>æ</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ūs</i>	<i>ei</i> .

10. The *genitive* case in *English* is known by the sign *of*, before the noun, or by the *apostrophic s* [*'s*] following the noun; as

	GENITIVE.	GENITIVE.
Eng.	The crown <i>of the king</i> ; or, <i>the king's</i> crown.	
Lat.	<i>Corōna regis</i> ; or, <i>regis corōna</i> .	

11. The *leading*, or *first* case of a noun is the **NOMINATIVE**; and it expresses simply the *name* of the person or thing, which is *spoken of*; as

	NOM.	NOM.	GENITIVE.
Eng.	<i>Cicero</i> , <i>the father</i> of (his) ³ country.		
Lat.	<i>Cicero</i> , <i>pater</i>		<i>patriæ</i> .

² The *six CASES* are, the *Nominative*, the *Genitive*, the *Dative*, the *Accusative*, the *Vocative*, and the *Ablative*.

³ Words in parentheses throughout this work are *not expressed* in Latin.

12. But when the person or thing is *spoken to*, this same form of the noun is called the VOCATIVE case.

VOCATIVE. VOCATIVE. GENITIVE.

Eng. O Cicero, father of (thy) country.

Lat. O Cicero, *pater* patriæ.

13. (a) The genitive case always stands *before* the noun which governs it, like the English idiom in "*the king's crown*." Lat. *Regis corōna*.

(b) But when the governing noun is *emphatic*, or a *monosyllable*, the emphatic noun or monosyllable stands first; as

Eng. Cicero, *the* father of (his) country.

Lat. Cicero, *pater* patriæ.

In which sentence *pater* is the more emphatic, and therefore stands before the genitive *patriæ*.

Eng. The law *of* nature.

Lat. *Lex*⁴ *naturæ*.

QUESTIONS.

1. In languages, how many *persons* are there? Which is the *first* person? which, the *second*? which, the *third* person? —2. Of what person are all nouns? What have they to agree with them in the *same* person?—3. What words do we in English place before nouns? [*A*, or *the*; *of a*; *of the*; *to a*; *to the*; *in*, *with*, *from*, or *by a* or *the*.] Which words do we place before verbs? [The pronouns *I*, *thou* or *you*, *he*, *she*, *it*, *we*, *they*, which are never expressed in Latin except for the sake of emphasis; and the signs of the tenses *do*, *am*, *did*, *was*, *have*, *shall*, *will*, &c.]—4. What did the Romans instead of placing such words before their nouns and verbs? (Changed the endings.)—5. What is this change in *nouns* called? What, in verbs?—6. What is the part of the word remaining unchanged called? (The *root* of that word.)—7. Repeat the lines noting the number of *declensions* and *cases*.—8. How are the *five* declensions distinguished?—9. Name the genitive endings

⁴ *Lex* the *monosyllable* precedes *natura*.

of all the declensions.—10. By what *sign* is the genitive case known in English? (By *of*, or by the *apostrophic s.*) Give in Latin "*the king's crown.*"—11. Which is the first case of a noun? (Nominative.) What does it express?—12. When a person or thing is *spoken to*, what is the same form called? (The vocative case.)—13. Where should the genitive case always stand? [(a) *Before* its governing noun; (b) but when the governing noun is *emphatic*, or a *monosyllable*, the governing noun stands *first*.]

EXERCISE 1.

14. (Learn these words, and write down their *genitives* and *declension*. Observe, the *endings* are separated from the *roots* by a hyphen; thus: *Musa*, G. *mus-æ*, a song.)

Musa, G. *mus-æ*, a song.

Magister, G. *magistr-i*, a master.

Dominus, G. *domin-i*, a lord.

Regnum, G. *regn-i*, a kingdom.

Nubes, G. *nub-is*, a cloud.

Lapis, G. *lapid-is*, a stone.

Opus, G. *oper-is*, a work.

Parens, G. *parent-is*, a parent.

Manus, G. *man-ûs*, a hand.

Facies, G. *faci-êi*, a face.

Terra, G. *terr-æ*, the earth.

Cælum, G. *coel-i*, heaven.

Corôna, G. *corôn-æ*, a crown.

Rex, G. *rêg-is*, a king.

Domus, G. *dom-ûs*, a house.

Amicus, G. *amic-i*, a friend.

Deus, G. *De-i*, God.

Virtus, G. *virtût-is*, virtue, merit.

Vir, G. *vir-i*, man.

Lex, G. *lêg-is*, law.

Example.	{	GEN.	NOM.
		<i>Societatis</i>	<i>vinculum.</i>
		<i>Of society</i>	<i>the bond.</i>

15. *Amici facies. Dei manus. Vir virtutis* (13, b).
Viri opus. Lex parentis (13, b). *Lapidis opus. Magis-*
tri corona. Domini regnum. Regis musa. Coeli nubes.
Parentis domus. O rex (12). *O vir. O magister.*

[Place the genitive *before* the governing noun, and omit the English *article*, and the sign *of*; and words in brackets.]

The Lord *of the* earth. The work *of* (his) parent.
 The master's song. A cloud *of* heaven. The king's
 crown. A friend's house. The kingdom *of* God.
 The law *of* nature (13, b). O parent. O earth. O
 heaven. O nature.

LESSON 2.

CONJUGATIONS OF VERBS.

What is the change in *nouns* called? (3.)—What is it called in *verbs*? (5.)—What is the *root* of a word? (6.)—How many *persons* are there? (1.)

All *nouns* are of the *third* person, and they have *verbs* to agree with them always in the *same* person. (2.)—We must therefore proceed to the formation of verbs, in order to begin writing sentences.

16. There are in verbs *four* alterations,
In grammar term'd their *conjugations*,
And known by the vowel preceding *re*;
As *äre, ëre, ère, ïre*¹.

¹ Looking at the etymological structure of Latin verbs, the conjugations comprise *three* contracted forms, and *one* uncontracted or *simple* form. The *long* vowels preceding *-re* in the infinitive mark the contracted verbs, and the *short* vowel is the *simple* verb; thus,

INFINITIVE.

- | | | | | | |
|---|--------------------|-----------|----------|------|----------|
| { | 1. Amo (for amāo), | contracts | ama-ëre | into | am-äre. |
| | 2. Moneo, | contracts | mone-ëre | into | mon-ëre. |
| | 4. Audio, | contracts | audi-ëre | into | aud-ïre. |
| " | 3. Rego, | simple, | reg-ere. | | |

The 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations may therefore be termed *pure* verbs, having a *vowel* before the final *o*; and

The 3rd conjugation comprises the *impure* verbs, which have a *consonant* before the *o*, with some few exceptions (*arguo, facio, &c.*). Whence the 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations have great *similarity* in their formation; while the 3rd stands alone in its irregularities. All the terminations of the 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations are *alike*, and can be proved so by etymology and analogy: the only *apparent* exceptions are the *perfect* and its derivations of the 2nd conj. in *-ui*, and the future in *-am* of the 4th conj.; but the *-ui* of the 2nd conj. is from the *same* root as the *-ri* of the 1st and 4th conj.; they are merely the compressed and absorbed form of *fui* (*f* equalling or comprising the sound of *r*); thus,

- i. Ama-*fui* = ama-*v(u)i*. ii. Mone-*fui* = mon(*ef*)*ui*.
iv. Audi-*fui* = audi-*v(u)i*.

In regard to the future in *-am* of the 4th conj., it originally *was* in *ibo*; as, *scibo* (for *sciam*), *servibo* (for *serviam*).—Zumpt. These conjugations are therefore *alike* in their etymological structure.

17. (a) The vowel of the *first* conjugation is *ā*
long—āre; as, *am-āre*, to love.
(b) The vowel of the *second* conjugation is *ē*
long—ēre; as, *mon-ēre*, to advise.
(c) The vowel of the *third* conjugation is *ĕ*
short—ĕre; as, *reg-ĕre*, to rule.
(d) The vowel of the *fourth* conjugation is *i*
long—īre; as, *aud-īre*, to hear.

18. The endings then of the *four* conjugations are,

I. conj. II. conj. III. conj. IV. conj.
-ārē. -ērē. -ūrē. -īrē.

19. These endings mark the *infinitive mood* of a verb, and give the simple meaning of the verb without reference to *person, time, or number*.

20. This is usually expressed in English by the sign *to*, before the verb, or the participial ending in *ing*; as,

Eng. *to love, or loving; to advise, advising; to rule, ruling.*
 Lat. am-äre mon-äre reg-äre.
 to hear, hearing.
 aud-äre.

Example. { Lat. Jucundum est *amare*.
 { Eng. Pleasant is to-love or loving.

English construction { *To love* is pleasant; or,
 { *Loving* is pleasant.

21. There are *three* persons :

The *first* is the person who *speaks*.

The *second* is the person *spoken to*.

The *third* is the person *spoken of*.

22. VERBS have *three* different forms or *endings* in each number, to agree with these *three persons*.

23. As *all nouns* are of the *third* person, we will begin with forming the *third* persons of verbs, leaving

⁶ *Infinite* means not *finite* or confined by any person, time, or number. *Modus*, from *modus*, means way, mode, or manner.

the *first* and *second* persons till we come to speak of *pronouns*.

24. All verbs have their *third* persons throughout ending in *t*: in the plural these *third* persons have *n* before the *t* (*nt*).

25. Whenever a verb is seen ending in *t*, it must be of the *third* person: if a vowel (*a*, *e*, or *i*) precedes the *t*, it is *singular*¹; if *n* precedes the *t*, it is *plural*.

26. N.B.—This refers only to verbs *active*; that is, when the *nominative* preceding the verb *performs* the action expressed by the verb. (By-and-by we shall speak of *passive* verbs.)

27. Verbs express *actions*, and these actions can be expressed as *completed*, or as *not-completed*.

28. Each class of actions can refer to *three* different periods of *time*:—namely, *present*, *past*, and *future*.

29. We will begin with *actions not-completed*, and *present* or *now doing*. A verb expressing this state of the action is in the **PRESENT TENSE**².

30. Verbs are made of the *third person singular, present tense*, by changing the ending *-re* of the infinitive into *t*: thus,

	I. conj.	II. conj.	III. conj.	IV. conj.
31.	<i>ā long.</i>	<i>ē long.</i>	<i>ĕ short.</i>	<i>ī long.</i>
Infinitive } endings.	ūre.	ēre.	ĕre.	īre.
	I.	II.	III. & IV.	
32.				
Present } tense.	ūt.	ēt.	īt.	

33. Observe, the *pure* verbs *-ūre*, *-ēre*, *-īre*, make the change *alike*, while the short *ĕ* of the *third* conj. becomes *i* before the *t*: hence *infn.* *-ĕre*; *present*, *-īt*.

¹ This rule does not extend to the *irregular verbs*.

² *Tense* means *time*.

QUESTIONS.

What is the change in nouns called? (5.) What, in verbs? (5.) What is the *root* of a word? (6.)—16. How many *alterations* are there in verbs? (*Four.*) What are they termed? (*Conjugations.*) How are they known? (By the vowel before *re.*) Repeat the four lines (16).—17. (a) What is the characteristic vowel of the *first* conjugation? (*ā long.*) (b) What is the vowel of the *second* conjugation? (*ē long.*) (c) What is the vowel of the *third* conjugation? (*ē short.*) (d) What is the vowel of the *fourth* conjugation? (*ī long.*)—18. What are the endings of the *four* conjugations? (*āre, ēre, ĩre, īre.*)—19. What do these endings mark? (They mark the *infinitive* mood, which gives the simple meaning of the verb.) What does *infinitive* mean? (Note 6.) What, *mood*? (Note 6.)—20. How is this expressed in English? What is the meaning of "*jucundum est amare*?"—21. What are the *three* persons?—22. What have verbs to agree with these persons? (*Three different endings.*)—23. Of what person are all nouns? (*Third.*)—24. What do the *third* persons of verbs always end in? (*t.*) What particularly in the plural? (*nt.*)—25. Whenever a verb ends in *t*, of what person is it? (*Third.*) If a vowel precedes the *t*, what does it mark? (*The singular.*) If *n* precedes *t*, what does that mark? (*The plural.*)—26. When the nominative to a verb performs the action expressed by the verb, what is the verb called? (*Active verb.*)—27. What do verbs express? (*Actions.*) How? (*As completed, and not-completed.*)—28. To what *time* can actions refer? (*Present, past, and future.*)—29. What *tense* expresses actions present or *now doing*? (*Present tense.*)—30. How are verbs made of the third person singular present tense?

Change the ending in *re*
Of infinitives, to *t*.

—31. What are the characteristic *vowels* of the *four* conjugation? (*ā long, ē long, ě short, ī long.*) What are the *infinitive endings* of the *four* conjugations? (*āre, ēre, ěre, īre.*)—32. What are the third person present endings? (*āt, ět, ĩt, and ĩt.*)—33. What does short *ě* of the *third* conjug. become before *t* in the present tense? (*ĭ; as, infin. ěre, present ĩt.*)

EXERCISE 2.

How many declensions are there? (7.)—How are they distinguished? (By endings of the *genitive*.) What are the *five* endings? (9.)—How is the genitive known in English? (10.)—What is the place of the genitive? (Before the governing noun.) What is the *nominative* case? (11.)

Learn these words, and name the *declensions* of the nouns, and why; and the *conjugations* of the verbs, and why.

[Words in the Exercise, and not in the Vocabulary, have been used before; if not remembered, refer to preceding Vocabularies, or to the Index at the end: a hyphen separates the *root* from the *termination*.]

34.

Tempus, G. tempör- <i>is</i> , <i>time</i> .	Fug- <i>ěre</i> , <i>to fly</i> .
Dies, G. di- <i>ěi</i> , <i>a day</i> .	Man- <i>ěre</i> , <i>to remain</i> .
Puer, G. puēr- <i>i</i> , <i>a boy</i> .	Ven- <i>ire</i> , <i>to come</i> .
Vita, G. vit- <i>ę</i> , <i>life</i> .	D- <i>äre</i> , <i>to give</i> .
Imperator, G. imperatör- <i>is</i> , <i>ruler</i> .	Disc- <i>ěre</i> , <i>to learn</i> .
Anñus, G. añm- <i>i</i> , <i>mind</i> .	Imper- <i>äre</i> , <i>to command</i> .
Fides, G. fid- <i>ěi</i> , <i>faith</i> .	Doc- <i>ere</i> , <i>to teach</i> .
Justitia, G. justiti- <i>ę</i> , <i>justice</i> .	Aud- <i>ire</i> , <i>to hear</i> .
Fundamentum, G. fundament- <i>i</i> , <i>foundation</i> .	Am- <i>äre</i> , <i>to love</i> .
Anima, G. anim- <i>ę</i> , <i>soul</i> .	Mon- <i>ěre</i> , <i>to advise</i> .
Pabulum, G. pabul- <i>i</i> , <i>food</i> .	Est, <i>verb</i> , <i>is</i> .
Scientia, G. scienti- <i>ę</i> , <i>science</i> .	Que, <i>conj.</i> , and (always ⁹ joined to a word).
Præmium, G. præmi- <i>i</i> , <i>reward</i> .	Et, <i>conj.</i> , and (not so closely ⁹ connecting as <i>que</i>).
Honor, G. honör- <i>is</i> , <i>honour</i> .	Non, <i>adv.</i> , not (stands before its verb).

35. Example.	ORDER.	GEN.	NOM.	VERB.
	Lat.	Ingenii	juvenis	discit.
	Eng.	Of talent	a youth	learns.

Take the *nominative* first; then the *genitive*, if it has one depending on it; and next the *verb*.

Tempus fugit. Lex manet. Venit dies. Deus dat. Puer discit. Rex impërat. Puëri magister

⁹ *Et* brings into combination things before unconnected and independent: *que* adds what belongs to a thing and naturally goes with it; *que* also closes an enumeration, and is *enclitic*, that is, throws back the accent to a prior syllable.—Zumpt.

docet. Regis amicus audit. Vitæ imperator est animus; fidesque est justitiæ fundamentum. Animæ pabulum est scientia. Virtutis præmium est honor. Cæli nubes movet. Vir amat et monet. Dãre, non nocẽre. Docẽre, non discẽre.

What do these verbs end in? (*t.*) What persons end in *t*? (*Third.*)

a, the, and the signs *of* and *to*, are not expressed in Latin.

A parent learns. The God *of heaven and* (use *que*) *earth* hears. *Nature's* (13, *b*) law commands. The *king's* friend comes. The *master's* honour remains. The Lord loves. Virtue advises. Honour is the reward *of virtue*. Justice commands. Science teaches. The mind is the ruler *of life*. The foundation *of the earth* remains. The *man's* hand moves. (My) *parents'* honour sleeps. The time *of day* comes. God gives. The king sleeps. Life remains. To come and to teach. To live and to learn. To remain, not to fly.

LESSON 3.

FIRST DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

FIRST CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

36. The *first* declension has the *nom.* and *voc.* in *ã*, and the genitive and dative in *æ*.

37. Learn the *terminations* of all the cases *singular* and *plural*: thus,

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom. }	-ã	Nom. }	-æ
Voc. }		Voc. }	
G. }	-æ { <i>of</i>	G. }	-ãrum
D. }	-æ { <i>to</i>	Dat. }	
Abl. }	-ã { <i>in, with, from,</i>	Abl. }	-is
	by, &c. }		
Acc.	-am	Acc.	-ãs

These *endings* are to be put to the *root*; as,

Mus-*a*, G. mus-*æ*. D. mus-*æ*. Abl. mus-*ã*. Acc. mus-*am*.

38. The nouns in *a* of this declension are *feminine*, excepting the names and offices of *men*, which are *masculine*.

39. All feminine nouns and adjectives in *a* are declined after this example.

40. The characteristic vowel of the *first* conjugation of verbs is *ā* long before the *re*; as,
 -āre, am-āre, *to love*.

41. The actions expressed by verbs are either *completed*, or *not-completed*.

42. Each class can refer to *three* different points of time; viz., *present*, *past*, and *future*.

43. Beginning with *not-completed* actions, the first conjugation forms the third person *singular* of these three times or *tenses* by changing -āre into -at, -ābāt, -ābit.

English signs.	INFIN.	PRESENT, or <i>now doing</i> .	IMPERF. <i>past</i> .	FUT.
	to.	do, am.	did, was.	shall, will.
	-āre	-āt	-ābāt	-ābit

44. The third persons *plural* of these tenses have *n* before the *t*; thus,

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>Sing.</i>	-āt	-ābāt	-ābīt
<i>Plur.</i>	-ant	-ābant	-ābunt ¹⁰ .

These *endings* are to be put to the *root* after *āre* is thrown away; as,

Am-āre	<i>Sing.</i>	am-āt, am-ābāt, am-ābīt.
	<i>Plur.</i>	am-ant, am-ābant, am-ābunt.

¹⁰ In comparative philology it cannot but be observed that the vowels are constantly substituted for each other, especially *u* for *i*, and conversely. In the 4th declen. the datives and ablatives plural are -*ibus*, or -*ubus*; in the futures of the 1st and 2nd conj. -*bit* becomes -*bunt*; in the 3rd and 4th conj. present tense, -*it* becomes -*unt*; and in many parts of the verb *esse*, to be, *sum, sumus, sunt*, become in the subjunctive, *sim, simus, sint*; in the imperative, *sint,unto, &c., &c.*: but we cannot enter on this subject here so fully and so satisfactorily as we could wish.

45. The *endings* of the *genitives* of the *five* declensions of *NOUNS* are,

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
-æ	-ī	-īs	-ūs	-cī

46. The endings of the *infinitives* of the *four* conjugations of *VERBS* are,

I.	II.	III.	IV.
-āre	-ēre	-ĕre	-īre

47. The *third* person *singular*, present tense, of the *four* conjugations, changes

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
<i>Infinitive</i> ,	-āre	-ēre	-ĕre	-īre
<i>into</i>				
<i>Pres. tense</i> ,	-āt	-ēt	-īt	-īt

48. In English the *ACCUSATIVE* case always *follows* the verb; in Latin put the accusative *before* the verb that governs it; as,

Lat. Mater filiam amat.

Eng. *The mother (her) daughter loves.*

Eng. constr. [The mother loves (her) daughter.]

QUESTIONS.

How many ways are nouns declined? (7.)—What does the *first* declension end in in the *genitive*? (æ.) What do the *nom.* and *voc.* end in? (ā.) Go through the terminations of all the cases of the first declension. (37.)—What do the *gen.* and *dat. sing.* end in? (æ.) What, the *nom.* and *voc. plur.*? (æ.) What is the difference in the ending of the *nom.* and *abl. sing.*? (*Nom.* ends in ā short; and *abl.* ā long.) What do the *dat.* and *abl. plur.* end in? (īs.)—38. What is the *gender* of the nouns in *a* of this declension? (*Feminine.*) What are *masculines*? (Names and offices of *men.*)—39. What words are declined after this example? How many *conjugations* of verbs are there? (16.)—What is the characteristic vowel of the *first* conjugation? (ā long.)—41. How can actions be expressed by verbs? (Either as *completed*, or *not-completed*.)—42. To what points of time can each class refer? (*Present*, *past*, and *future*)—43. How is

the third person sing. of each of these tenses formed in the first conj. P (By changing *äre* of the infin. into *ät* for the present; *abüt* for the imperfect; and *äbüt* for the future.) What are the English signs of these tenses? (Of the infin., *to*; of the present, *do* and *am*; of the imperfect, *did*, *was*; of the future, *shall*, or *will*.)—44. What is the third person plur. of these tenses? (Put *n* before the *t*, making *at* into *ant*, *abüt* into *abunt*, and *äbüt* into *äbunt*; mind, the future in the plural is *abunt*, the *i* being changed into *u*.)—45. What are the endings of the genitives of the five declensions?—46. What are the endings of the infinitives of the four conjugations?—47. What is the third person sing. pres. tense of the four conjugations? (*äre* of the first becomes *ät*; *äre* of the second becomes *ët*; *äre* of the third, *it*; and *äre* of the fourth, *üt*.)—48. Where does the accusative stand in English? Where, in Latin?

EXERCISE 3.

49. Name the declensions of the following nouns, and the conjugations of the verbs.

Diligentia, G. diligentī-æ, diligence.	Val-äre, to prevail.
Adolescens, G. adolescent-is, a young man.	Sper-äre, to hope.
Herba, G. herb-æ, herb.	Deb-äre, to owe (debet, ought).
Ætas, G. ætat-is, age.	Nutr-äre, to nourish.
Servus, G. serv-i, a slave.	Vig-ere, to flourish.
Regina, G. regin-æ, a queen.	Rump-äre, to break.
Fera, G. fer-æ, wild beast.	Laud-äre, to praise.
Catena, G. caten-æ, a chain.	Monstr-are, to point out.
Filia, G. fili-æ, a daughter.	Dare pœnas, to make atonement, give satisfaction, undergo punishment (with the crime in the genitive).
Poëta, G. poët-æ, a poet.	

What are the genitive endings of the five declensions? (45.)—What, the infin. and third person sing. pres. tense endings of the four conjugations? (46 & 47.)—What are the English signs of the gen., dat., and abl. cases? (*of* for the gen., *to* for the dat., and *in*, *with*, *from*, *by*, for the abl.)

50. Example.

ORDER.	GEN.	NOM.	ACC.	VERB.
Lat.	Scientiæ	amor	diligentiæ	accendit.
Eng.	Of knowledge	the love	diligence	excites.
Eng. constr.	[The love of knowledge excites diligence.]			

Diligentia valet. Sperabat adolescens. Animus debet imperāre. Terra herbas nutrit. Viget ætas. Servus reginam amābat. Fera catenam rumpit. Mater filiam laudabit. Magister poetam reginæ monstrabat.

51. The English verbs are conjugated with certain signs; thus,

PRESENT.

<i>Latin.</i>	<i>English.</i>
am-at,	(he) loves, or is loving.

IMPERFECT.

am- <i>abat</i> ,	(he) <i>did</i> love, or <i>was</i> loving.
-------------------	---

FUTURE.

am- <i>abit</i> ,	(he) <i>shall</i> or <i>will</i> love, or <i>be</i> loving.
-------------------	---

52. Words in *opposition* should be placed in Latin *close together*, or as far *apart* as possible; thus,

Eng. The queen's slave will-praise the queen's daughter.

Lat. Reginæ *servus* *filiam* reginæ laudabit.

Put the accusative *before* the verb.

The poet praises *nature* (48). The queen's slave will-praise *the queen's daughter* (52). The young-man's diligence prevails. The slave breaks *the chain*. A sailor will-love *the water*. The boy was-praising *science*, and the man did-love *justice*. The king will-give-satisfaction *to (his) daughter*.

LESSON 4.

SECOND DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

SECOND CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

ADJECTIVES.

53. The *second* declension has the Nom. and Voc. in *ūs, ōr, um*, and the genitive in *ī*.

54. Learn these terminations of all the cases singular and plural of the *second* declension :

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom. }	-ūs ¹¹ , -ēr, -um	Nom. }	-ī (neut. -a)
Voc. }		Voc. }	
G. }	-ī	G. }	-ōrum
Dat. }		Dat. }	
Abl. }	-ō	Abl. }	-īs
Acc. }	-um	Acc. }	-ōs (neut. a)

55. The terminations *ūs* and *ēr* are generally *masculine*, those in *um* are all *neuter*.

56. Nouns in *us* of this declension mostly make the vocative in *e* ; as,

Dominus, *a lord*. Voc. Domine, *O Lord*.

But proper names in *i*us make it *i* ;

So filius, and genius¹² ; *fili*, *geni*.

57. All *neuters* of whatever declension have the *nom. acc.* and *voc.* alike ; and in the plural these cases always end in *a*.

58. Many nouns in *er* drop the *e* in applying the terminations ; as,

Nom. magister,	Gen. magistri,
<i>a master,</i>	<i>of a master.</i>

(The *e* when it is to be dropped will be printed in *italic* letters in the *Vocabularies* ; as in *magister*).

59. The characteristic vowel of the *second* conjugation is *ē* long before the *re* ; as,

-ēre, *Mon-ēre, to advise.*

¹¹ *Deus, God*, has in the *voc. Deus* ; and also the *neuters, virus, pol-son, and pelagus, the sea.*

One noun (with its compounds) of this declension ends in *ir* : namely, *Vir, a man.*

¹² *Filius, a son ; genius, a genius.*

60. The *third* persons singular of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of *not completed* actions in the second conjugation are formed by changing the

INFIN.	PRESENT.	IMPERF.	FUTURE.
-ēre	into -ēt	-ēbat	-ēbīt.

61. The third persons *plural* take *n* before the *t* final; as,

	PRESENT.	IMPERF.	FUTURE.
<i>Sing.</i>	-ēt	-ēbāt	-ēbīt
<i>Plur.</i>	-ent	-ēbant	-ēbunt

62. The *infinitives*, and third persons *singular* and *plural* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the *first* and *second* conjugations are,

INFINITIVES.

1. -āre 2. -ēre

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>Sing.</i> {	I. <i>conj.</i> -āt	-ābāt	-ābīt
{	II. <i>conj.</i> -ēt	-ēbāt	-ēbīt
<i>Plur.</i> {	I. <i>conj.</i> -ant	-ābant	-ābunt
{	II. <i>conj.</i> -ent	-ēbant	-ēbunt

63. Nouns in *ūs* and *ēr* of this declension are *masculine*, and nouns in *um* are *neuter*; nouns in *ā* have been described in the last lesson as *feminine*, and to be of the *first* declension; therefore all **ADJECTIVES** ending in *ūs* or *ēr* for the *masc.*, *ā* for the *fem.*, and *um* for the *neuter*, are declined after these examples:

MAS.	FEM.	NEUT.
ūs, ēr, II. <i>decl.</i>	ā, I. <i>decl.</i>	um, II. <i>decl.</i> ¹³

¹³ The three terminations are thus declined throughout:

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
Mas.	Fem.	Neut.		Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	
Nom. } -ūs	or -ēr	-ā	-um	Nom. } -ī	-ae	-ā	
Voc. } e				Voc. } -ī			
Gen. } ī	-ae	-ī		Gen. } -ōrum	-ārum	-ūrum	
Dat. } -ō	-ae	-ō		Dat. } -īs			
Abl. } -ō	-ā			Abl. } -īs			
Acc. -um	-am	-um		Acc. -ōs	-ās	-ā	

64. *Adjectives* must be of the same *number*, same *case*, and same *gender* as the nouns they explain or qualify; as,

Summum jus, summa injuria.
Extreme law (is) extreme injustice.

(Here *summum* is put in the *neut.* gender, *sing.* number, and *nom.* case; because *jus*, the word it qualifies, is *neut.* gender, *sing.* number, and *nom.* case: so *summa* is put in the *fem.* gender, *sing.* number, and *nom.* case; because *injuria* is in the *sing.* number, *fem.* gender, and *nom.* case.) The three *Nom.* endings of this adjective are,

MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Summ-us	-a	-um.

QUESTIONS.

Name the *genitives* of the five declensions. (1st, *æ*; 2nd, *ī*; 3rd, *īs*; 4th, *ūs*; 5th, *ei*.) Name the characteristic vowels of the four conjugations. (1st, *a* long before *re*; 2nd, *ē* long before *re*; 3rd, *ē* short before *re*; 4th, *ī* long before *re*.) What gender are the terminations of the first declension? (*Feminines*, except the appellations of men.)—53. What are the *nom.* terminations of the second declension? (*ūs*, *ēr*, *um*.)—54. Repeat the terminations of all the cases of the second declension.—55. Of what *gender* are the terminations *ūs* and *ēr*? (*Masc.*) What, that of *um*? (*Neuter*.)—56. What do most nouns in *ūs* make the vocative end in? (*e*.) What are exceptions?—57. What cases have all *neuter* nouns alike? (*Nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.*) What do they end in in the *plural*? (*ū*.)—58. How are many nouns in *ēr* declined? (By dropping the *e* in the *nom.* ending; as, *faber*, a workman, *G. fabri*, *dat. fabro*.)—59. What is the characteristic vowel of the second conjugation? (*ē* long before *re*; as, *mon-ēre*.)—60. How are the *pres.*, *imperf.*, and *fut.* tenses, third person *sing.*, formed of the second conjugation? (By changing *ēre* into *ēt* for the *pres.*; *ēbat* for the *imperf.*; and *ēbit* for the *future*.)—61. What are the third persons *plural* of these same tenses? (*Pres.*, *ent*; *imp.*, *ebant*; *fut.*, *ebunt*.) How are the *plurals* formed?—62. Repeat the endings of the *infin.*

and the pres., imp., and fut. tenses, third person of the two conjugations.—63. Of what *declension* and *gender* are nouns in *ūs*? (Second decl. and *masc.*) What are nouns in *um*? (Second decl. *neut.*) What, nouns in *ā*? (First decl. and *fem.*) Go through these endings in the order *us, a, um*. (See note ¹³.) How are adjectives in *us, a, um* declined? (Exactly after these examples.)—64. How are adjectives used? (In perfect *agreement* with the nouns they elucidate or qualify; viz., in the *same number, same gender, and same case.*)

EXERCISE 4.

Name the *genders*, and *declensions* of the nouns; and the *conjugation* of the verbs.

The exceptions to 38 and 55 will be marked; *m.* for *masc.*, *f.* for *fem.*, and *n.* for *neut.*

65.

Bon-*us-a-um*, adj., good.
 Studiosus-*a-um*, adj., studious.
 Cæsar, G. Cæsar-*is*, Cæsar.
 Magn-*us-a-um*, great, large.
 Audacia, G. audaci-*æ*, boldness.
 Hostis, G. host-*is*, an enemy.
 Parvus-*a-um*, adj., little.
 Industria, G. industri-*æ*, industry.
 Numerus, G. numer-*i*, number.
 Pulcher-*ra-rum*, adj., beautiful.
 Liberi, G. liber-*orum*, plur. children.

Poculum, G. pocul-*i*, a cup.
 Aureus-*a-um*, adj., golden.
 Argenteus-*a-um*, adj. of silver.
 Sylva, G. sylv-*æ*, a wood.
 Merum, G. mer-*i*, wine.
 Herus, G. her-*i*, master (of a slave).
 Roma, G. Romæ, Rome.
 Aug-*ēre*, to increase.
 Don-*āre*, to present.
 Impl-*ēre*, to fill.
 Dol-*ēre*, to grieve.
 Nunc, *adv.*, now.

66. Example.

ORDER.	ADJ.	NOM.	ACC.	ADJ.	VERB.
Lat.	<i>Boni</i>	<i>parentes</i>	<i>liberos</i>	<i>suos</i>	<i>fovebunt</i>
Eng.	<i>Good</i>	<i>parents</i>	<i>children</i>	<i>their-own</i>	<i>will-cherish.</i>

Eng. construction. [Good parents will-cherish their own children.]

67. Adjectives generally stand *before* their nouns, except *meus* (*my*), *tuus* (*thy*), *suus* (*his, hers, its*), and some other little words, and *monosyllables*.

68. Words that usually precede, must give place to the *more emphatic*; that is, the more emphatic must come *first* (13, b).

69. When a *genitive* is governed by a noun which has an adj. with it, put the genitive *between* the adj. and noun.

The boys' great diligence.

ADJ.	GEN.	NOM.
Magna	puerorum	diligentia.

70. *Bonus* magister *studiosos* pueros docebit. *Cæsar magnam* audaciam hostis (68) non auget. *Parva puerorum* industria *magnum* numerum dolēbat. *Pulchra* mater *bonas* filias amare debet (49). *Magna* regina pocula *aurea argenteaque* viris donabat. Nunc vigent sylve (68).

Where do *adjectives* usually stand?—67. Where do *emphatic* words stand? 68.

The king was-filling the large cup with-wine. A good slave will-praise his (67) master (65). The great man's sons will-see Rome. The good young-man advises the great poet's (*m*) daughter. The masters were-praising *the boys'* great diligence (69). The beautiful slaves were pointing-out *the king's* beautiful daughters (69). The boy's master now loves the slave's master (65).

LESSON 5.

THIRD DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

THIRD CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

71. The *third* declension has the nom. and voc. ending in *various* terminations, but the genitive is in *is*.

72. Learn these terminations of all the cases *singular* and *plural* of the third declension.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom. }	<i>various.</i>	Nom. }	-ēs.
Voc. }		Voc. }	
G.	-īs	G.	-um and ium.
Dat.	-ī	Dat. }	-ibus.
Abl.	-ē (some have abl. in ī)	Abl. }	
Acc.	-em (some have acc. in -im)	Acc.	(like nom. and voc.)

73. The endings of the nom. of this declension are,

Vowels, a e i o y.

Consonants, x c l n s t r¹⁴.

74. The genders of the terminations of this declension may be comprised in these lines ;

There are exceptions we confess ;

But MASC'LINES end in *er, or, os, and o,*

And nouns *increasing* ending *es*.

But every other word in *s,*

A few in *us,* with *io, go, and do,*

And *x,* are FEMALE, if you please.

But *ar, ur, us,* and other *vowels* than *o,*

With *c, l, n* and *t,* are NEUTER tho'.

75. Remember that *neuter* nouns have the *nom., acc., and voc.,* alike ; in the plural these cases end in *a*.

76. The characteristic vowel of the *third* conjugation is *ē* short, before the *re* ; as,

-*ēre, reg-ēre, to rule.*

77. The *third* persons singular of the *present, imper-*

¹⁴ Or they may be borne in mind by some such mnemonic attempt as this,

Remember all the vowels but *u*
With *Ecce, Ellen, Esther* too.
(*xc l n st r*)

fect, and *future* tenses of *not-completed* actions in the third conjugation, are formed by changing the

INFIN.	PRESENT.	IMPERF.	FUT.
-ēre	<i>into</i> -īt	-ēbat	-ēt.

78. The third persons *plural* take *n* before the *t*, but the *i* of the *present* becomes *u*, like in the *futures* of the first and second conjugations.

	PRESENT.	IMPERF.	FUT.
<i>Sing.</i>	-īt	-ēbat	-ēt
<i>Plur.</i>	-unt	-ēbant	-ent.

79. The *infinitives*, and third persons *sing.* and *plur.* of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the first, second, and third conjugations are,

INFINITIVES.

	I. -āre	II. -ēre	III. -īre.
	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>Sing.</i>	I. conj. -āt	-ābāt	-ābīt
	II. conj. -ēt	-ēbāt	-ēbīt
	III. conj. -īt	-ēbāt	-ēt
<i>Plur.</i>	I. conj. -ant	-ābant	-ābunt
	II. conj. -ent	-ēbant	-ēbunt
	III. conj. -unt	-ēbant	-ent.

80. *Adjectives* ending in any of the consonants of this declension are declined like (72): those in *is* have the neuter in *e* and the neuter plural in *ia*: the *abl. sing.* ends in *i*, and the *gen. plur.* in *ium*.

81. *Adjectives* in the *masculine* gender without a noun, agree with *man* understood; in the *feminine*, with *woman* understood; in the *neuter* they agree with *thing* understood; as,

Fortes *fortūna* *adjuvat*,
The brave *fortune* *helps*.
 (Fortune helps *the brave* [men.])

(Here *fortes* is masc. and implies *the brave men*; *homines* or *viros* the Latin for *men* being understood.)

QUESTIONS.

71. Which is the genitive ending of the third declension? (*is*.)—72. Go through the endings singular and plural.—73. What are the *vowel* endings of the nom. of this declension? (All but *u*.) What are the *consonant* endings? (*note* ¹⁴.)

Ecce, Ellen, Esther,
æc l n st r.

74. Repeat the lines conveying the genders.—75. What cases of *neuters* are alike? What are they in the plural? (In *c*.)—76. What is the characteristic vowel of the third conj.? (*ē short*.)—77. How are the third persons sing. of the pres., imperf., and future of *not-completed* actions formed in the third conj.? (By changing the *inf. ēre* into *it* for the pres., *ēbāt* for the imperf., and *ēt* for the future.)—78. What are the third persons *plural* of these tenses? (*it* of the pres. becomes *unt*; *ēbāt* of the imperf. becomes *ēbant*; and *ēt* of the future becomes *ent*.)—79. Repeat the *infinitives*, and third *persons* sing. and plur. of these three tenses in the first, second, and third conjugations?—80. How are *adjectives* not in *us* or *er-a-um* declined? (Like the example of the third declension in 72.)—What are the *neuters* of *adjectives* in *is*? (*e* in the sing., *ia* plural.)—What is the *abl.* sing.? (*i*.)—What the *gen.* plural? (*ium*.)—80. What do *adjectives* *without* a noun agree with? (If *masc.* with *man* understood; if *fem.* with *woman* understood; if *neuter*, with *thing* understood.)

EXERCISE 5.

m. denotes masculine, *f.* feminine, *n.* neuter.

82.

Sapiens, G. sapient- <i>is</i> , adj., wise.	Mors, G. mort- <i>is</i> , (<i>f.</i>) death.
Beāt-us-a-um, adj., happy.	Romān-us-a-um, adj. Roman.
Rector, G. rectōr- <i>is</i> , a ruler.	Romulus, G. Romul- <i>i</i> , Romulus.
Humān-us-a-um, adj., human.	Exordium, G. exordi- <i>i</i> , beginning.
Genus, G. genēr- <i>is</i> , (<i>n.</i>) a race.	Britannus, G. Britann- <i>i</i> , a Briton.
Vinum, G. vin- <i>i</i> , (<i>n.</i>) wine.	Frumentum, G. frument- <i>i</i> , corn.
Sol, G. sōl- <i>is</i> , (<i>m.</i>) the sun.	Lac, G. lact- <i>is</i> , (<i>n.</i>) milk.
Mundus, G. mund- <i>i</i> , (<i>m.</i>) the world.	
Lux, G. luc- <i>is</i> , (<i>f.</i>) light.	

Turpis, (<i>neut. c.</i>) G. turp-is, base.	Caro, G. carn-is, flesh.
A, <i>prep.</i> , from, by (followed by the abl. case; it becomes <i>ab</i> before vowels, and <i>abs</i> before <i>q</i> and <i>t</i>).	Vet-ĭre, to forbid.
Suus-a-um, always must be used for <i>his, hers, its</i> , when it means or refers to the <i>nominalive</i> of the verb.	Impl-ĕre, to fill.
	Macul-ĭre, to stain.
	Ser-ĕre, to sow.
	Viv-ĕre, to live.
	Sed, <i>conj.</i> , but (<i>sed</i> implies a <i>change</i> of subject; <i>autem</i> , an <i>addition to</i> , or <i>continuation</i> of the subject.)
	Semper, <i>adv.</i> , always.

83. The parts of the verb *est*, is, *sunt*, are, &c. are often understood in Latin; as,

Præmium virtutis honor
The reward of virtue honor.

Eng. construction. [Honor (*is*) the reward of virtue.]

84. Example.

Animus erit rector humani generis.
The mind will-be the-ruler of-the human race.

85. *Sapienter est semper beatus.* Animus (83) rector (68) humani generis. Plato¹⁵ vinum pueris vetat. Sol implet mundum (68) luce sua. Pausanias¹⁵ magnam belli gloriam turpi morte maculabat. Romanum imperium a Romulo exordium habet. Britanni frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt.

Where stands the acc.? (*Before* the governing verb.) Where do adverbs stand? (*Before* their verbs.)

(a) *Not*, and other *adverbs* in English, stand between the verb and its signs, *do, am, did, was, shall, will*, &c.; as, "Plato *does not live*." And these signs are not expressed in Latin.

Pausanias¹⁵ stains *his* glory. The Roman empire did-have (its) beginning *from* Romulus. A happy (81) man is not always wise. Plato¹⁵ does not *live*. All (81) men *will not forbid* wine to boys. The sun *will not fill* the world *with his* light. Wise (men) sow corn. He stains *his* glory.

¹⁵ *Proper names* when the same in Latin as in English are not inserted in the Vocabularies.

LESSON 6.

FOURTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

FOURTH CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

86. The *fourth* declension has the nom. and voc. in *ūs*, and the genitive in *ūs*.

87. Learn these terminations of all the cases *singular* and *plural* of the fourth declension.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		<i>neut.</i>
Nom. }	-ūs	Nom. }	-ūs	-ua
Voc. }		Voc. }		
Gen.	-ūs	Gen.	-uum	
Dat.	-ūī	Dat. }	-ibus &	
Abl.	-ū	Abl. }	-ubus	
Acc.	-um	Acc.	(as nom.)	

88. The nouns in *ū* of this declension are *neuter*, and are not declined in the *sing.* They are declined in the plural as above, making the nom., acc., and voc. in *ua*.

89. The nouns in *ūs* are nearly all *masculine*: these are the *feminines*.

Acus, <i>a needle</i>	manus, <i>a hand</i>	socrus, <i>a mother-in-law</i>
Anus, <i>an old woman</i>	nurus, <i>daughter-in-law</i>	quercus, <i>an oak</i>
Domus, <i>a house</i>		tribus, <i>a tribe</i> .
Ficus, <i>a fig</i>	portus, <i>a portico</i>	

90. These words following have in *dat.* and *abl.* plural *-ībus*.

Arcus, acus, portus, quercus, ficus, lacus, artus

Et tribus, et partus; specus *adde* veruque, pecuque¹⁶.—Zumpt.

¹⁶ The above are *hexameters* from Zumpt; this may suit the memory better:—

Arcus, acus, portus, veru,
Ficus, lacus, artus,
Specus, quercus, also pecu,
Tribus too, and partus.

Arcus, *a bow*; portus, *a harbour*; lacus, *a lake*; artus, *a limb*; partus, *a birth*; specus, *a cave*; veru, *a spit*; pecu, *cattle*; acus, &c. See 89.

91. The characteristic vowel of the *fourth* conjugation is *i* long before the *re*; as

-īre *aud-īre*, *to hear*.

92. The *third* persons singular of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of *not-completed* actions in the fourth conjugation are formed by changing the

INFIN.	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
<i>-īre into</i>	<i>-īt</i>	<i>-iēbāt</i>	<i>-iēt</i>

93. The *third* persons *plural* take *n* before the *i*; as

	PRESENT.	IMPERF.	FUTURE.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>-īt</i>	<i>-iēbāt</i>	<i>-iēt</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>-iunt</i>	<i>-iēbant</i>	<i>-ient</i>

94. The *infinitives* and third persons sing. and plur. of the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses of the four conjugations are as follows, and should be learnt by heart.

INFINITIVES.				
	I. -āre.	II. -ēre.	III. -ĕre.	IV. -īre.
	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.	
<i>Sing.</i>	I. -āt	-ābāt	-ābīt	
	II. -ēt	-ēbāt	-ēbīt	
	III. -ĕt	-ĕbāt	-ĕt	
	IV. -īt	-iēbāt	-iēt	
<i>Plur.</i>	I. -ant	-ābant	-ābunt	
	II. -ent	-ēbant	-ēbunt	
	III. -unt	-ĕbant	-ent	
	IV. -iunt	-iēbant	-ient	

95. (a) The *infinitive* mood of a verb may be used as a substantive of the Nom. or Acc. case, and is of the *neuter* gender (19); so that adjectives in agreement must also be neuter, as,

Lat. Jucundum est *amare*.

Eng. *Pleasant* is *to-love*.

Eng. construction. [To-love is pleasant.]

- (b) Or the verb (not in the infinitive) may be taken *first* with “*it*” prefixed; as, *It* is pleasant to love.

QUESTIONS.

86. What are the nom. and voc. endings of the fourth declension? (*ūs*.)—87. Repeat the terminations of all the cases, sing. and plur.—88. What are nouns in *u*? (*Neuter*.) How are they declined?—89. What is the gender of nouns in *ūs*? (*Masc.* generally.) What are the *feminines*?—90. What words have dat. and abl. plur. in *ūbus*?—91. What is the characteristic vowel of the fourth conj.? (*ī* long before *re*.)—92. How are the third pers. sing. of the *pres.*, *imperf.*, and *future* tenses formed?—93. How do you form the third pers. plur.?—94. Repeat the *infinitives* and third pers. *sing.* and *plur.* of the *present*, *imperf.* and *future* tenses of all the conjugations.—95. How may infinitives be used? (*As neuter nouns*.) In what cases? (*Nom.* and *acc.*)

EXERCISE 6.

96.

Luctus, G. luct-*ūs*, *m.*, grief.

Metus, G. met-*ūs*, *m.* fear.

Studium, G. studi-*i*, *n.* study.

Adolescentia, G. adolescenti-*æ*,
f. youth.

Fletus, G. flet-*ūs*, *m.* weeping.

Senectus, G. senectut-*is*, *f.* old-
age.

Difficilis, difficile, *adj.* difficult.

Urbs, G. urb-*is*, *f.* a city.

Hostis, G. host-*is*, *m.* an enemy.

Currus, G. curr-*ūs*, *m.* a chariot.

Innocens, innocent-*is*, *adj.*
innocent.

Dominus, G. domin-*i*,

Magister, G. magistr-*i*,

Herus, G. her-*i*,

Len-*ire*, to mitigate.

Excruci-*are*, to torture.

Nesc-*ire*, not-to-know.

Al-*ere*, to nourish; improve.

Oblect-*are*, to delight.

In, *prep.* into (signifying *mo-*
tion takes the *acc.* case);

in (signifying *at rest* takes
the *abl.* case).

Ad, *prep.* to (followed by *acc.*
case).

Semper, *adv.* always.

Dominus, G. domin- <i>i</i> ,	} master {	of property.
Magister, G. magistr- <i>i</i> ,		who teaches.
Herus, G. her- <i>i</i> ,		of slaves.

97. Example.

Lat. Sinus metum nescit.

Eng. The bosom fear knows-not.

Eng. constr. [The bosom knows not fear.]

Luctus et metus animum semper excruciant. Studia adolescentiam alunt, oblectant senectutem. Difficile est judicare. Caesar parvū in urbe (99) dormiebat. Hostis currum audiet. Rex magnam ad urbem nunc venit. Metum nescire (98) jucundum est.

98. When *infinitives* are used as *nouns*, they can govern their cases as usual.

99. When a *preposition* governs a *substantive*, having an *adjective* with it, place the *preposition* between the *adjective* and the *substantive*; thus,

ORDER.	Adjective.	Preposition.	Noun.
	<i>Parvū</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>urbe.</i>

Where stands the acc.? (*Before* the verb.) Where stands the prep. governing an adj. and noun in agreement? (99)

It is (95, *b*) disgraceful (95, *a*) to-torture the innocent (81) (*or* to-torture the innocent is disgraceful). The enemy will-sleep *in* the little (99) city. Weeping mitigates *his* (82, 67) grief. Caesar was-coming *to* (96) the city. Time improves youth: ease delights old-age. The horses will-bear (their) masters. Fear *will* always (85, *a*) torture men's minds.

LESSON 7.

FIFTH DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

100. The *fifth* declension has the *Nom.* and *Voc.* in *ēs*, and the *Gen.* in *ei*.

101. (*a*) Learn the terminations of all the cases, *sing.* and *plur.*, of the *fifth* declension.

(*b*) The *plural* is complete alone in these:
*dies, species, and res*¹⁷.

¹⁷ *Dies*, a day; *species*, an appearance; *res*, a thing: Cicero objects to the gen. plural *specierum*.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom. }	-ēs	Nom. }	-ēs
Voc. }		Voc. }	
Gen. }	-ei	Acc. }	{ only in <i>dies,</i> <i>species,</i> & <i>res.</i>
Dat. }		Gen. }	
Abl. }	-ē	Dat. }	
Acc. }	-em	Abl. }	
			-ēbus

102. Nouns of this declension are *feminine*.

Dies is masc. and fem. in *sing.*, and masc. in the *plur.* *Meridies* is masc. and has no *plural*.

103. Adjectives form their *comparative* degree by adding to the *root*, *-ior* for masc. and fem., and *-ius* for the neuter: as,

COMPARATIVE.

root.	m. & f.	neut.
doct- <i>us</i> , <i>learned</i> ,	doct- <i>ior</i> , <i>more learned</i> .	doct- <i>ius</i> .

104. (a) The *superlative* degree is formed by adding to the *root*,

m.	f.	n.
- <i>issimus</i>	- <i>issima</i>	- <i>issimum</i> :
as,		

SUPERLATIVE.

root.	m.	f.	n.
Doct- <i>us</i> <i>learned</i>	doct- <i>issimus</i> <i>most-learned</i> .	- <i>a</i>	- <i>um</i> .

(b) These adjectives form the *superlative*:

Those in *er*, by adding *-rīmus*;

Some in *lis*, change *is* to *-līmus*: as,

In *er*—pulcher, fair; pulcher-*rīmus*, fairest;

In *lis*—facilis, easy; facil-*līmus*, easiest.

105. (a) The tenses of verbs for *Not-completed* actions are *present*, *imperfect*, and *future*.

NOT-COMPLETED or actions *doing*.

	PRESENT.	IMPERFECT.	FUTURE.
	<i>Doing, now.</i>	<i>Doing, at a time past.</i>	<i>Doing, at a time to come.</i>
31.	I am writing now.	I was writing when you entered.	I will write to-morrow.

(b) The tenses for *completed* actions are also three, and refer, like the others, to times or actions *present*, *past*, or *to come*; they are the *PERFECT*, *PLUPERFECT*, and the *FUTURE PERFECT*.

COMPLETED, or actions *done*.

	PERFECT, sign <i>have</i> .	PLUPERFECT, <i>had</i> .	FUT. <i>shall or will have</i> .
	<i>Done, now.</i>	<i>Done, at a time past.</i>	<i>Done, at a time to come.</i>
	I wrote, or have written now.	I had written before you entered.	I shall have written before to-morrow.

106. The third persons *sing.* of the three tenses for *completed* actions, in the *first* and *fourth* conjugations, are formed by changing the *re* of the infinitive into *vit*, *ērūt*, *ērīt*. (See note ¹.)

	INFIN.	PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUTURE PERF.
Sign.	<i>to</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>had</i>	<i>shall or will have</i> .
I.	-āre	-āvīt	-āvērāt	-āvērīt
IV.	-īre	-īvīt	-īvērāt	-īvērīt.

107. The third persons *plural* are formed by changing in *all the conjugations*, *-it* of the perfect into *-ērunt* or *ēre*; and in the *pluperf.* and *fut.* by putting *n* before the *t* of the *sing.*

	PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUTURE PERF.
<i>Sing.</i> I.	-āvīt	-āvērāt	-āvērīt
<i>Plur.</i>	-āvērunt or -avēre	-āvērānt	-āvērīnt
<i>Sing.</i> IV.	-īvīt	-īvērāt	-īvērīt
<i>Plur.</i>	-īvērunt or -ivēre.	-īvērānt	-īvērīnt

QUESTIONS.

100. What is the ending of the nom. and voc. of the fifth declension? (*es*.) What of the genitive? (*ei*.)—101. (*a*) Repeat the terminations of all the cases *singular* and *plural* of the *fifth* declension. (*b*) What nouns only are complete in the plural?—102. Of what *gender* are the nouns of this declension?—103. How do adjectives form their *comparative* degree? (By adding to the *root*, *-ior* for mas. and fem., and *-ius* for neut.)—104. (*a*) How do adjectives form the *superlative* degree? (By adding to the *root*, *issimus-a-um*.) (*b*) How do those in *er* and *lis* form their *superlative*?—105. (*a*) What are the tenses for *not-completed* actions? (*Present, imperfect, future*.) (*b*) What, for *completed* actions? (*Perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect*.)—106. How do the first and fourth conjugations form their three tenses for *completed* actions in the third person singular? (By changing *re* of the *infinitive* into *vī*, *verat*, and *verit*.)—107. How are the third persons *plural* formed? (The *perfect* changes *it* into *-erunt* and *-ēre*; and the *pluperfect* and *future perfect* put *n* before *t* of the *sing*.)

EXERCISE 7.

108.

Sapiens, G. sapient- <i>is</i> , adj. wise.	Pulcher-chra-chrum, adj. fair, beautiful.
Magnus-a-um, adj. great.	Lenis, m. & f. lene, n. adj. gentle.
Gloria, G. glori- <i>æ</i> , glory.	Omnis, m. & f. omne, n. adj. all.
Turpis, m. & f. turpe, neut. adj. base.	Vicissitudo, G. -din- <i>is</i> , f. change.
Mors, G. mort- <i>is</i> , f. death.	Spes, G. sp- <i>ei</i> , f. hope.
Humān-us-a-um ¹⁸ , adj. human, polite.	Validus-a-um, adj. strong.
Studium, G. studi- <i>i</i> , study.	Erat, verb, was.
Macul-āre, to stain.	Orn-āre, to adorn.
Bene, adv. well.	Miser-era-erum, adj., miserable.
Res secundæ, plural, prosperity.	Res, G. rei, a thing, affair; secundus-a-um, prosperous; adversus-a-um, adverse.
Res adversæ, plural, adversity.	

¹⁸ The substantive *humanitas* means *classical learning*; and *literæ*, means the *sciences*, and *knowledge generally*.

109. Example.

Lat. *Suam regina faciem pulcherrimam putaverat.*
 Eng. *Her own the queen face most-beautiful had-thought.*

English construction. [The queen had thought her own face the most beautiful.]

Socrates sapientissimus (81) erat. Pausanias magnam belli gloriam turpissimâ morte macularât. Humaniora studia secundas res ornâtörunt. Pulcherrima Dido bene dormierit. Lenissima omnium rerum vicissitudo spem validiorem dabit.

The signs *have* and *has* of the perfect are in English often omitted ;

I have loved, or I loved.
Dido has loved, or Dido loved.

The wisest (man. 81) was Socrates. Fair Dido thought (perj.) her-own condition (1+2) most miserable. Prosperity and the change of affairs will-give stronger hope. Pausanias stained the glory of the great war by a baser death. The strongest hope of glory slept. The basest studies had-stained the young-man's glory.

EXERCISE 8.

110. (a) *Than* after a comparative degree, when omitted in Latin, requires the following noun to be in the *ablative* case if the persons or things compared possess a *portion* of the same quality ; as,

Lat. Tullus Hostilius erat ferocior Romulo.
 Eng. Tullus Hostilius was more warlike than Romulus.

Where Romulus had a portion of the quality expressed by the adj. *ferocior* : he was a bold man, but Tullus Hostilius was bolder.

- (b) When *than* is expressed by *quam*, the person or thing compared is in the *samo* case as the person or thing with which it is compared ; and is supposed *not* to

possess any portion of the quality of the adjective; as,

Lat. Romulus erat ferocior quam Numa.
Eng. Romulus was more-warlike than Numa.

Where Numa possesses *none* of the quality of the adj. *ferocior*; for Numa was *not* warlike; if he had been, *quam* would have been omitted, and *Numa* would have been in the *abl*.

111.

Nihil, <i>n.</i> (indeclined,) nothing.	Amabilis, <i>m. & f.</i> -ile, <i>n.</i> adj. amiable.
Carus- <i>a-um</i> , adj. precious, dear.	Ferrum, <i>G. ferr-i</i> , iron.
Scienti- <i>a</i> , <i>G. -æ, f.</i> knowledge.	Aurum, <i>G. aur-i</i> , gold.
Ferox, <i>G. ferōc-is</i> , adj. warlike, bold.	Præstans, præstan- <i>tis</i> , adj. excellent.
Velox, <i>G. velōc-is</i> , adj. swift.	Argentum, <i>G. -nt-i</i> , silver.
Taurus, <i>G. taur-i</i> , a bull.	Canis, <i>G. can-is</i> , <i>m.</i> a dog.
Quam, <i>conj.</i> than.	Est, verb, <i>is</i> , Erat, verb, <i>was</i> .

What case does *than* after a comparative require? (110, *a*) (*Ablative*, if *than* is not expressed.) What, if *than* is expressed by *quam*? (The persons or things compared are in the *same* case.) (*b*)

112. Nihil est *virtute* amabilius. Justitia est carior auro. Virtus est *justitiâ* carior. Virtus est *scientiâ* præstantior. Carior quam aurum est justitia. Cæsar ferocior erat quam Cicero. Scientia est præstantior gloriâ. Adolescentia quam senectus est innocentior. Magister sapientior puero liberos pulchros docet. Secundæ res (108) quam res adversæ sunt præstantiores. Omnes (83) non sapientes. Nescire (95, *a*) non sapiens (83). Hominis vitam studium bene ornavit.

[Without *Quam* (110, *a*).] Nothing is more excellent than virtue. Gold is more-precious than silver. The horse is swifter than the dog. The boy is bolder than the man.

[With *Quam* (110, *b*).] Gold is more precious than iron. The dog is swifter than the bull. Fairest Dido was more-amiable than Cassandra. The father was more warlike than the son, but (82) the son was more-amiable than the father.

LESSON 8.

THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

(Recapitulation.)

113. (a) The first declension has its nom. in *ā*,
and gen. in *æ*.

(b) The second declension has its nom. in
er, us, and um, and gen. in *ī*.

(c) The third declension has its

Nom'native in all the *vowels* but *u*,

With *x, c, l, n, s, t, r*, too.—(See note¹⁴, p. 20.)

And the gen. in *is*.

(d) The fourth declension has its nom. in *ūs*,
and gen. in *ūs*.

(e) The fifth declension has its nom. in *ēs*, and
gen. in *ei*.

114. ENDINGS OF ALL THE DECLENSIONS.

SINGULAR.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Nom. } <i>the</i>	-ā	-ēr -ūs -um	(various)	-ūs -u	-ēs
Voc. } <i>O</i>	-æ	-ī	-īs	-ūs	-cī
Gen. } <i>of</i>	-æ	-o	-ī	-ui	-eī
Dat. } <i>to</i>	-ā	-o	-e or i	-ū	-ē
Abl. } <i>in, with,</i>	-ā	-o	-e or i	-ū	-ē
Acc. } <i>from, by</i>	-am	-um	-em or -im	-um	-em

PLURAL.

Nom. } <i>the</i>	-æ	ī & a	-ēs	-ūs & uæ	-ēs
Voc. } <i>O</i>	-æ	ī & a	-ēs	-ūs & uæ	-ēs
Gen. } <i>of</i>	-ārum	-ōrum	-um & ūm	-uum	-ūrum
Dat. } <i>to</i>	-īs	īs	-ībus	-ībus	-ēbus
Abl. } <i>in, with,</i>	-īs	īs	-ībus	-ībus	-ēbus
Acc. } <i>from, by</i>	-as	-os & a	-ēs	-ūs & uæ	-ēs

115. Repeat the *genitives* singular and plural of all the declensions.

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
-æ	-ī	-īs	-ūs	-cī.

The gen. plural always end in *um* ¹⁹.

-arum -orum -um or ium -uum, -crum.

116. Repeat the *acc.* sing. of all the declensions.

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
-am	-um	-em	-um	-em.

117. The *datives* and *ablatives* plural are alike; the first and second end in *is*, and the others in *us*.

118. The *nom.*, *acc.*, and *voc.* plural of all nouns, except those in *a* of the first, and *er* and *us* of the second, are alike.

	For all neuters.	III. and V. declension	IV. declension.
Nom. } plural	-a	-ūs	-ūs.
Acc. }			
Voc. }			

119. The PERFECT, PLUPERFECT, and FUTURE-PERFECT tenses for *completed actions* in the Second conjugation are formed in the third person sing. by changing *-ēre* of the infinitive into *-uit*, *-uerat*, *-uerit*.

INFIN.	PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUT. PERF.
-ēre	-ūit	-ūerat	-ūerit.

¹⁹ The *genitives plural* of Latin nouns, properly speaking, all end in *um*; the proneness of the language to abbreviation, however, has favoured an apparent irregularity, which is thus evident:

	GENITIVE PLURAL.	GEN. ABBREVIATED.
I. Decl. <i>cœlicola</i> ,	<i>cœlicolarum</i> ,	<i>cœlicol-ŏm</i> .
II. Decl. <i>triumvir</i> ,	<i>triumvirorum</i> ,	<i>triumvir-ŏm</i> .
<i>noster</i> ,	<i>nostrorum</i> ,	<i>nostr-ŏm</i> .
III. Decl. <i>parens</i> ,	<i>parentorum</i> (obsolete),	<i>parenti-um</i> , & <i>parent-um</i> .
<i>sponsalia</i> , pl.	<i>sponsali-orum</i> ,	<i>sponsali-um</i> .
IV. Decl. is altogether a contraction merely of the second declension.		
<i>domus</i> ,	<i>domorum</i> ,	<i>domu-um</i> , & <i>domŏm</i> .
V. Decl. <i>res</i> ,	<i>rerum</i> (only <i>res</i> and <i>dies</i> have a gen. plural).	
[Cicero condemns <i>speciesum</i> . Zumpt.]		

120. The *plurals* of these tenses in the third person are formed *alike* in all the conjugations:

Perfect changes *-it* into *-ērunt* or *-ēre*
Pluperfect } put *n* before *t*, { *-uērāt* } for *plural*.
Fut. Perf. } *-uērīt*

	PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUT. PERF.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>-uit</i>	<i>-uērāt</i>	<i>-uērīt.</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>-uērunt</i> or <i>-uēre</i>	<i>-uērāt</i>	<i>-uērīt.</i>

QUESTIONS.

113. Name the nominative and genitive endings of the *five* declensions.—114. Go through the endings of *all* the declensions.—115. What is the *gen. sing.* and *plur.* of all the declensions?—116. What, the *acc. sing.*?—117. What, the *datives* and *ablatives*?—118. What are the *nom., acc.,* and *voc. plural* endings of nearly all nouns? (*Alike.*) What are the exceptions? (Those in *a* of the first decl., and *us* and *er* of the second decl.) What are the *nom., acc.,* and *voc. plural* endings of *neuter* nouns? Of all nouns of the third decl.? Of the fourth decl.? Of the fifth decl.?—119. How are the *perfect, pluperfect,* and *future perfect* tenses third person *sing.* of the second conj. formed?—120. How are their *plurals* formed? How are these tenses and persons, *sing.* and *plur.,* formed in the first and fourth conjugations? (106 and 107.)—Are the *plurals* of these tenses formed *alike* in all the conjugations? (*Yes.*)

EXERCISE 9.

121.

Numerus, G. <i>-eri</i> , number.	Thymus, G. <i>-ymi</i> , thyme.
Miles, G. <i>milit-is</i> , a soldier.	Frigidus <i>-a-um</i> , adj. cold.
Mel, G. <i>mell-is</i> , <i>n.</i> honey.	Amicus <i>-a-um</i> , adj. friendly.
Glacies, G. <i>glaci-ei</i> , <i>f.</i> ice.	Roma, G. <i>Rom-æ</i> , Rome.
Dux, G. <i>duc-is</i> , <i>m.</i> a leader.	Duplic- <i>are</i> , to double.
Populus, G. <i>-ulsi</i> , the people.	Mon- <i>ere</i> , to advise.
Senator, G. <i>-ōris</i> , senator.	Hab- <i>ere</i> , to have.
Servus, G. <i>-vī</i> , slave.	Non, <i>adv.</i> not.

Example.

- Ille nullum filium callidiorem habuit quam Phormionem.
 He no son more-cunning had than Phormio.

English construction. [He had no son more-cunning than Phormio.]

122. *Scientia est præstantior auro. Priscus numerum senatorum duplicavit. Cæsar multos milites habuit. Senatores multos servos habuerunt. Mel est dulcius thymo. Nihil est glacie frigidius. Duces quam regina amiciores populos monuerunt.*

How are the *endings* of nouns and verbs applied? (To the root.) What is the *root* of a word? (The part of a word *not changed*, and which in nouns always precedes the *genitive endings*, and in verbs the *infinitive endings*.)

The senators doubled the number of the slaves. The queen had not many soldiers *more-friendly than* her people. Honey is sweeter *than* (use *quam*) thyme. Cæsar had-advised (his) soldiers. The leaders of the soldiers were *more-friendly than* the senators of Rome. Good silver is *more-excellent than* bad gold.

LESSON 9.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES. (*Recapitulation.*)

TENSES OF VERBS.

123. Some adjectives have *three* terminations, one for each gender:

us or *er* for the *masc.*

a for the *fem.*

um for the *neut.*

124. (a) The endings *us*, *er*, and *um* are of the second declension, and *a* is of the *first*; learn their *endings* throughout; as,

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>		<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
	II. dec.	I. dec.	II. dec.		II. dec.	I. dec.	II. dec.
Nom. }	-us & er	-a	-um	Nom. }	-i	-æ	-a
Voc. }	-e			Voc. }			
G.	-i	-æ	-i	G.	-orum	-arum	-orum
D.	-o	-æ	-o	D. }	-is for all genders		
Abl.	-o	-a	-o	Abl. }			
Acc.	-um	-am	-um	Acc.	-os	-as	-a

(b) Some adjectives in *er* lose the *e*; and some retain the *e*; as,

(keep the <i>e</i> .)				(lose the <i>e</i> ²⁰ .)			
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>		<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom. }	tener	-era	-erum,	Nom. }	piger	-gra	-grum,
Voc. }	&c. &c.			Voc. }	&c. &c.		

125. Adjectives *not* of *three* terminations are declined like the third declension of nouns.

(a) Those in *is* have a *neuter* form for the nom., acc., and voc. in *o* in the singular, which becomes *ia* for these cases in the plural; thus,

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>neut.</i>		<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>neut.</i>
Nom. }	trist- <i>is</i>	trist- <i>o</i> .	Nom. }	trist- <i>es</i>	trist- <i>ia</i> .
Voc. }	trist- <i>is</i>		Voc. }	trist- <i>es</i>	trist- <i>ia</i> .
Acc. }	trist- <i>em</i>		Acc. }	trist- <i>es</i>	trist- <i>ia</i> .

[The other cases are like all nouns of the third declension.]

(b) The comparatives in *or* have a *neuter* for the nom., acc., and voc. singular in *us*, which becomes *ŭra* for these cases in the plural; thus,

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>neut.</i>		<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>neut.</i>
Nom. }	meli- <i>or</i>	meli- <i>us</i> .	Nom. }	meliŭr- <i>es</i>	meli- <i>ŭra</i>
Voc. }	meli- <i>or</i>		Voc. }	meliŭr- <i>es</i>	meli- <i>ŭra</i>
Acc. }	meli- <i>or</i>		Acc. }	meliŭr- <i>es</i>	meli- <i>ŭra</i>

[The singular *neuter* is formed by changing *or* into *us*; for the plural add *a* to the *or*. The other cases are like all the nouns of the third decl.]

126. The *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *futura perfect* tenses of the Third conjugation are formed differently

²⁰ *Piger* drops the *e*, with *ruber*, *æger*,
And scaber, ater, macer,
Sinister, niger, pulcher, creber,
And vafer, tæter, sacer.

from the other conjugations: they are very irregular, and require some attention. (See note ³³, page 57.)

- (a) First change *ěre* of the *infinitive* like the other conjugations into *-it*, *-erat*, *-erit*, if the verb ends in a *vowel*;

as, *acu-it*, *acu-erat*, *acu-erit*;

But if the verb ends in a *consonant*, add *s* to the *root*; thus,

INFIN.	PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUT. PERF.
-ěre	-s-it	-s-ěrat	-s-ěrit.

as,

carp-ěre (to pluck) *carps-it* *carps-ěrat* *carps-ěrit*.

- (b) Roots ending in a *p* sound (as *b*, *p*), become *p* before the *s*; as,

inf. scrib-ěre (to write); *perf. scrips-it* (not *scribs-it*); *pluperf. scrips-erat*; *fut. perf., scrips-erit*.

- (c) Roots ending in a *k* sound (as *c*, *g*, *ct*, *qu*) or *h*, unite with the *s* and become *x*; as,

ducs-it (*dūxit*), *flects-it* (*flexit*), &c.

	INFIN.	PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUT. PERF.
c.	<i>duc-ěre</i> (to lead)	<i>dux-it</i>	<i>dux-ěrat</i>	<i>dux-ěrit</i> .
ct.	<i>flect-ěre</i> (to bend)	<i>flex-it</i>	<i>flex-ěrat</i>	<i>flex-ěrit</i> .
g.	<i>reg-ěre</i> (to rule)	<i>rex-it</i>	<i>rex-ěrat</i>	<i>rex-ěrit</i> .
qu.	<i>coqu-ěre</i> (to cook)	<i>cox-it</i>	<i>cox-ěrat</i>	<i>cox-ěrit</i> .
h.	<i>trah-ěre</i> (to draw)	<i>trax-it</i>	<i>trax-ěrat</i>	<i>trax-ěrit</i> .

- (d) Roots ending in a *t* sound (as *t*, *d*): some drop the *t* sound, and some drop the *s*; as,

[1. These drop the *t* sound.]

	INFIN.	PERF.	PLUPERF.	FUT. PERF.
	<i>claud-ěre</i> (to close)	<i>claus-it</i>	<i>claus-ěrat</i>	<i>claus-ěrit</i> .
	<i>mitt-ěre</i> (to send)	<i>mis-it</i>	<i>mis-ěrat</i>	<i>mis-ěrit</i> .

[2. These drop the *s*.]

	<i>defend-ěre</i> (to defend)	<i>defend-it</i>	<i>defend-ěrat</i>	<i>defend-ěrit</i>
	<i>ed-ěre</i> (to eat)	<i>ed-it</i>	<i>ed-ěrat</i>	<i>ed-ěrit</i> .

127. The *plurals* of these tenses are formed regularly :

PERF.	PLUPERF. and FUT. PERF.
<i>Sing. changes</i>	put <i>n</i> before the <i>t</i> :
-it into	-erat becomes -erit
<i>Plur. -erunt or -ere</i>	-erant . . . -erint.

QUESTIONS.

123. For what are the *three* terminations in some adjectives? —124. (a) Of what declension are these endings? (*us, er, and um*, of the second decl.; *a* of the first decl.) Go through all the endings. How are some adjectives in *er* declined? [(b) Some lose the *e*, some keep the *e*.] What adjectives lose the *e*? (Say note ²⁰.)—125. How are adjectives *not* of *three* terminations declined? (Like the third decl.) What is the *neuter* form in the nom., acc., and voc. for those in *is*? (125 (a). viz. *e* in the sing. and *ia* in the plur.) What is the *neuter* form for comparatives in these cases? (125 (b). viz. *or* becomes *us* in the singular, and adds *a* for the plural; *us*, *melior*, neut., *melius*; plur., *melior-es*, neut., *melior-a*.)—126. How are the *perf.*, *pluperf.*, and *fut. perf.* tenses formed for the third conjugation? (They change the infin. *-ere* into *-it, -erat, -erit*, in a very irregular manner.) What do they generally first *add* to the root? [*s*. 126 (a).] What do the *p* sounds become with *s*? [*ps* and *bs* = *ps*. 126 (b).] What do the *k* sounds or *h* become with *s*? [*cs, clis, gs, qus, or hs* = *x*. 126 (c).] What do the roots in a *t* sound? [Some drop the *t* sound, and some the *s*. 126 (d).] How are the *plurals* of these tenses formed? (Regularly: *-it* becomes *erunt* or *ere*, and the others put *n* before the *t* of the singular.)

EXERCISE 10.

128.

Exercitus, G. -i, an army.
Fera, G. -æ, wild-beast.
Antonius, G. Antoni-i, Anthony.
Egyptus, G. Egypt-i, Egypt.
Cunctatio, G. -onis, *f.* delay.
Oppidum, G. -idi, a town.
Epistola, G. æ, a letter.

Sæpe, *adv.* often.
Præstans, G. -ntis, *adj.* excellent.
Cleopatra, G. æ, Cleopatra.
Uxor, G. uxōris, *f.* a wife.
Velox, G. ōcis, *adj.* swift.
Impedimenta (plur.), G. -orum, *baggage*.

Homo, G. hominis, a man or woman, mankind in general.	Duc-ēre, to lead (<i>ducere uxorem</i> , is to lead a wife, to marry).
Festin-āre, to hasten.	Nub-ēre, to marry (<i>a man</i>), followed by a <i>datice</i> (properly <i>to veil</i> as a woman).
Noc-ēre, to hurt.	
Trab-ēre, to draw.	
Depend-ēre, to depend.	
Scrib-ēre, to write.	

129. Example.

Annum Numa descripsit in decem menses.
The year Numa divided into ten months.

Eng. constr. [Numa divided the year into ten months.]

Cæsar magnum exercitum duxit. Homo feris est præstantior. Antonius Cleopatram reginam (130) Egypti *duxit-uxorem*. Festinare nocet; nocet et cunctatio sæpe. Veloces equi impedimenta traxerunt. Filius patre sapientior oppidum defenderat.

130. Two nouns together meaning the *same thing* are to be in the *same case*; this is called *apposition*; and the noun in apposition is *last*, unless it is the more *emphatic*. [The apposition noun expresses some descriptive name or title of the former noun.].

Anthony *had* often *lead* (his) army. The swiftest horses *had-drawn* the baggage of the enemy. Cleopatra, queen (130) of Egypt, loved Anthony, and Anthony *married* Cleopatra. The boy's father *wrote* a longer letter *than* (his) son. The *more-beautiful* Cleopatra *married* Anthony (*dat.*). The fairest queen *will-have-written* the longest letter.

LESSON 10.

PRONOUNS.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

131. The *pronouns* for the *first* and *second* persons are

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
Nom.	Gen.	Dat.	Acc. & Abl.	Nom. & Acc.	Gen.	Dat. & Abl.	
I. Ego	mei	mihi	me	Nos	nostrum ²¹ or i	nobis	
I	of me	to me	me, & by me	We, us	of us	to or by us	
II. Tu	tui	tibi	te	Vos	vestrum or i	vobis	
thou	of you	to you	you or by you	Ye or you	of you	to you.	

(a) *Meus-me-a-meum*, my, and *noster-nostra-nostrum*, our, are the adj. pron. of the first pers. *Tuus-tua-tuum*, thy, and *vester-vestra-vestrum*, your, are the adj. pron. of the second person.

(b) *Ego*, *nos*, *tu*, *vos*, and *se* have properly no genitives, making use of their possessives *meus*, *tuus*, *sus*, *noster*, and *vester* for that purpose, which are declined like the adj. (63, note ¹³.)

132. The pronouns for the third person are *illo*, *is*, and *sui*: *illo* and *is* are thus declined:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Mas. he.	Fem. she.	Neut. it.	Mas. they.	Fem. they.	Neut. they.
NOM. Ille	ill-a	ill-ud	NOM. Illi	ill-æ	ill-a
Is	e-a	id	Hi	e-æ	e-a
G. illius			G. ill-orum	ill-arum	ill orum
ejus (for eius)			e-orum	e-arum	e-orum
DAT. Illi			DAT. Illis		
ei			ACL. } iis or eis		
ACC. ill-um	ill-am	ill-ud	ACC. ill-os	ill-as	ill-a
e-um	e-am	id	e-os	e-as	e-a
ABL. ill-o	ill-a	ill-o	ABL. (as the dative.)		
e-o	e-a	e-o			

(*Ille* is more emphatic than *is*; and like *ille* decline *iste-a-ud*, that, and also *ipse*, which makes *ips-um* instead of *ipsud* in nom. and acc. neut.)

133. *Sui* has no nom. case, and is the same in both numbers; thus

SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

NOM. (none).

GEN. *Sui*, of

DAT. *Sibi*, to

ACC. *Se*, self, itself; themselves; his, its, &c.

ABL. *Se*, by

[*Suus, sua, suum*, his, hers, its, is the adj. pronoun of the third person, and is declined like all adj. of three terminations.]

²¹ *Nostrum* and *vestrum* refer to the noun, the subject of discourse, and *nostrî* and *vestrî* to the object.—Zumpt.

134. *Sui* and *suus* are used when the pronoun refers to the *nom.* of the verb ; a,

Lat. Joannes diligit Jacobum, et fratrem suum.

Eng. John loves James, and *his* brother.

Here *his brother* means the brother of John, the *nom.* to the verb ; if *his* referred to *James* which is not the *nom.* it must be expressed by *cjus* :

John loves *his own* brother—*fratrem suum*.

John loves *James's* brother—*cjus fratrem*.

(*Suum* follows *fratrem*, by Rule 67.)

135. The *tenses* that have been already formed are for

NOT-COMPLETED ACTIONS.

COMPLETED ACTIONS.

Present.

Perfect.

Imperfect.

Pluperfect.

Future.

Future-perfect.

These are the tenses that form the *INDICATIVE mood* of verbs, which is used for simply *declaring* or *affirming* every action.

136. These tenses throughout all the conjugations, are

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	
Infin.	-āre	-ēre	-ĕre	-īre	to love.
			<i>Indicative.</i>		
Present	-āt	-ēt	-īt	-īt	} loves, <i>is</i> lov- ing, <i>does</i> love.
Plur.	-ant	-ent	-unt	-iunt	
Imperf.	-ābāt	-ēbāt	-ĕbāt	-ībāt	} <i>did</i> love or <i>was</i> loving.
Plur.	-ābant	-ēbant	-ĕbant	-ībant	
Future	-ābīt	-ēbīt	-ĕt	-īēt.	} <i>shall</i> or <i>will</i> love.
Plur.	-ābunt	-ēbunt	-ent	-ient	
Perfect	-āv-īt	-u-īt	-—īt	-īv-īt	} loved or <i>have</i> loved.
Plur.	-āv-ērunt [or-ēre	-u-ērunt [or-ēre	-—ērunt or [—ĕre	-īv-ērunt [or-ēre	
Pluperf.	-āv-ērāt	-u-ērāt	-—ērāt	-īv-ērāt	} <i>had</i> loved.
Plur.	-āv-erant	-u-erant	-—erant	-īv-erant	
Fut. Prf.	-āv-ērīt	-u-ērīt	-—ērīt	-īv-ērīt	{ shall or will have loved, or <i>beloving</i> .
Plur.	-āv-erint	-u-erint	-—erint	-īv-erint	

137. Adjectives in the *neuter* gender without a substantive, and expressing *part* of any quantity, require a *genitive*; as,

Eng. A little money.

Lat. *Paululum pecuniæ* (a little of money).

Eng. Some time.

Lat. *Aliquid temporis* (something of time).

(These adjectives may be considered in the light of substantives of the *neuter* gender.)

QUESTIONS.

131. Go through the pronouns for the *first* and *second* person.—What are the *adj.* pronouns for the first and second persons? (*Meus* and *tuus*.)—132. What are the pronouns for the third person? (*Ille*, *is*, and *sui*.) Go through *ille* and *is*.—133. Go through *sui*. What are the *adjective* pronouns of the third person? (*Suus*; and *ille* and *is* are also used as adjectives.)—134. When are *sui* and *suus* used? What is the place of *suus*? (*After* its noun.)—135. What are the tenses for *not-completed* actions? What, for *completed*? What *mood* do they form? (*The indicative mood*.)—136. Go through these tenses for all the verbs.—137. What case do adjectives in the *neut.* gender without a substantive require? (*Genitive*)

EXERCISE 11.

138. *Neuter* adjectives followed by *genitives*.

Multum, much.

Tantum, so much.

Quantum, how much.

Nimium, too much.

Aliquantum, very much.

Paululum, a little²².

Quid, what. (*Quid novi?*

What of new thing? *What news?*)

Minus, less.

Hoc, this.

Plus, more.

Aliquid, some.

Nihil, (*not declined*), no, nothing.

Plurimum, most.

Minimum, least.

The adverbs taking a *genitive* are,
 Parum, *little*²² satis, *enough* abundè, *plenty*.

Laus, G. laudis, <i>f.</i> praise.	Novus-a-um, <i>adj.</i> new.
Voluptas, G. -tātis, <i>f.</i> pleasure.	Veritas, G. -tātis, truth.
Malus-a-um, <i>adj.</i> evil, bad.	Filia, G. -æ, daughter.
Ignavus-a-um, <i>adj.</i> idle.	Amitt-ēre, to lose.
Severitas, G. -tātis ²³ , severity.	Tribu-ēre, to attribute.
Pecunia, G. -æ, money.	Vit-āre, to avoid.
Frater, G. -atris, brother.	Cras, <i>adv.</i> to-morrow.

139. Example.

Homērus Nestōri tribuit *tantum* laudis.
Homer to-Nestor attributes so-much praise.

Eng. constr. [Homer attributes *so much* praise to Nestor.]

Croesus *multum* pecuniæ habuit. Antonius *nimum* temporis Cleopatrá reginā Egypti amisit. *Quantum* voluptatis habebit? Rex fratre sapientior *multum* mali vitaverat. *Quid* novi? *Multum* laudis dabit mihi, tibi *paululum* pecuniæ. Gloria *voluptate* est præstantior (110). Filia mea *multum* temporis amiserit. Ignavus puer novā in urbe cras dormiet. Pecuniam (98) *habere* (95) sapientius est (95) quam pecuniam (98) *amittere*.

The idle boy lost *more* time. Truth has *some* severity. The good queen attributes *much* praise to her (134) fair daughter (67). Anthony had lost *too-much* time with Cleopatra queen of Egypt. Cæsar lost *no* time. The enemy will give us (*dat.*) *some* time. He sent to you *very-much* of his (134) money, and to me *a little* of his praise. *What* news?

²² *A little* opposed to "*not more*" or "*some*," is *paululum*; *little* opposed to *much* is *parum*; thus

A little money,
Paululum pecuniæ.

Little money,
Parum pecuniæ.

²³ Nouns in *tas* make the English in *ty*: *veritas*, *verity*; *severitas*, *severity*.

LESSON 11.

FIRST AND SECOND PERSONS OF VERBS.

140. The three persons of verbs end in both numbers; in

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1st pers.	2nd pers.	3rd pers.	1.	2.	3.
-o, -m, -i,	-s,	-t,	-mus,	-tis,	-nt.

(a) Conj. I.—*Pres.*, *fut.*, and *fut. perf.*, change *at* and *it* of the third person of each tense into *o*; as,

	PRES.	FUT.	FUT. PERF.
3rd pers.	am-at	am-ūb-it	am-āvēr-it
1st pers.	am-o	am-ūb-o	am-āvēr-o.

(b) Conj. II.—*Present* changes third person *et* into *o*.

3rd pers.	mon-et	1st pers.	mon-o.
-----------	--------	-----------	--------

Fut. and *fut. perf.*, as in first conj., viz., change *it* into *o*.

I. conj.	3rd pers.	am-ūb-it	1st pers.	am-ūb-o.
II. conj.		mon-ēb-it		mon-ēb-o.

(c) Conj. III. & IV.—*Present tense* change *-it* of the III. conj. into *o*.

3rd pers.	reg-it	1st pers.	reg-o.
-----------	--------	-----------	--------

Change *-it* of the IV. conj. into *-io*.

3rd pers.	aud-it	1st pers.	aud-io.
-----------	--------	-----------	---------

Future tense change *-et* of both conj. into *am*.

III. conj.	3rd pers.	reg-et	1st pers.	reg-am.
IV. conj.	3rd pers.	audi-et	1st pers.	audi-am.

Future perf. like the other conjugations.

(d) All the conjugations change *-it* of the *future perf.* into *-o*.

III. conj.	3rd pers.	rex-ēr-it	1st pers.	rex-ēr-o.
IV. conj.	3rd pers.	aud-ivēr-it	1st pers.	audivēr-o.

(e) PERFECT TENSES of all conjugations change *-it* of the third person into *-i* for the first person.

I. conj.	3rd pers.	amūvit	1st pers.	amūv-i.
II. conj.	"	monuit	"	monu-i.
III. conj.	"	rexīit	"	rex-i.
IV. conj.	"	audīvit	"	audiv-i.

(f) The *imperfect* and *pluperfect* tenses throughout, and all the other persons of the other tenses, follow the rule of changing the *t* of the third person into each of these endings :

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
-m	-s	-t	-mus	-tis	-nt ²⁴ .

(g) *.* Observe.—The PERFECT of all verbs for the second person singular and plural change *-it* into *-isti* for the singular, and *-istis* for the plural.

141. MODEL OF ALL THE TENSES INDICATIVE.

(To be learnt by heart.)

I. CONJ.	II. CONJ.	III. CONJ.	IV. CONJ.
PRESENT.			
-o	-eo	-o	-io
-ās	-ēs	-īs	-īs
am-āt	mon-ēt	reg-īt	aud-īt
-āmūs	-ēmūs	-īmūs	-īmūs
-ātis	-ētis	-ītis	-ītis
-ant	-ent	-unt	-iunt.
IMPERFECT.			
-ābam	-ēbam	-ēbam	-iēbam
-ābās	-ēbās	-ēbās	-iēbās
am-ābāt	mon-ēbāt	reg-ēbāt	aud-iēbāt
-ābāmūs	-ēbāmūs	-ēbāmūs	-iēbāmūs
-ābātis	-ēbātis	-ēbātis	-iēbātis
-ābant	-ēbant	-ēbant	-iēbant.
FUTURE.			
-ābo	-ēbo	-am	-iam
-ābīs	-ēbīs	-ēs	-iēs
am-ābīt	mon-ēbīt	reg-ēt	aud-iēt
-ābīmūs	-ēbīmūs	-ēmūs	-iēmūs
-ābītis	-ēbītis	-ētis	-iētis
-ābunt	-ēbunt	-ent	-ient.

²⁴ These personal endings are nearly *universal*; the *present* has lost its ending in *m*, though we find it in *sum* and *inquam*. The *perfect indicative* is without it; also the futures in *bo* and *ro*. This is not surprising; for we find that the practice of dropping *m* was much indulged in by Roman writers, and especially speakers: Cato, the censor, is noted for his omission of *m* in the futures of verbs in *o* and *io*, writing *dice* for *dicam*. (See *Quintillian*, *Inst. Or.* i. 7.) Moreover, the *figure ecthipsis* shows the practice in poetry of cutting off *m* with its vowel.

PERFECT.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
-āvī	-uī	-ī	-īvī
-āvisī	-uisī	-isī	-īvisī
am-āvī	mon-uī	rex-ī	aud-īvī
-āvimūs	-uimūs	-īmūs	-īvimūs
-āvisīis	-uisīis	-isīis	-īvisīis
-āverunt	-uerunt	-erunt	-īverunt
or -ēre	or -ēre	or -ēre	or -ēre.

PLUPERFECT.

-āvēram	-uēram	-ēram	-īvēram
-āvērās	-uērās	-ērās	-īvērās
am-āvērā	mon-uērā	rex-ērā	aud-īvērā
-āvēramūs	-uēramūs	-ēramūs	-īvēramūs
-āvērāis	-uērāis	-ērāis	-īvērāis
-āvērant	-uerant	-erant	-īvērant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

-āvērō	-uērō	-ērō	-īvērō
-āvērīs	-uērīs	-ērīs	-īvērīs
am-āvērī	mon-uērī	rex-ērī	aud-īvērī
-āvērīmūs	-uērīmūs	-ērīmūs	-īvērīmūs
-āvērīis	-uērīis	-ērīis	-īvērīis
-āvērīnt	-uerīnt	-erīnt	-īvērīnt.

⚡ The *future perfect* is usually placed in the *subjunctive* mood, but it is *not* a *subjunctive tense*. "It declares a future action, as absolutely perfected, before another action, likewise future, shall have been completed."—*Crombie*.

The *future subjunctive* is formed by the participle in *rus*, and part of *sum*: thus, *amaturus-sim*—*amaturus-sis*—*amaturus-sit*, &c., when the other tenses of the *subjunctive* will not act as substitutes.—*Zumpt*.

QUESTIONS.

140. What are the endings for the *three* persons in both numbers? How is the first person of the *pres.* and two *futures* formed in the *first* conj.? [(a) By changing -at or -it of the third person into o.] How is the first person of the *pres.* of the *second* conj. formed? [(b) By changing -et into -eo.] How are the first persons of the two *futures* formed? (Like in the first conj., by changing -it into -o.) How do the *III.* and *IV.* conj.

form the first person present tense? [(c) Change *-it* into *-o* for the *III.* conj., and into *-io* for the *IV.* conj.] How is the first person of the first *future* formed? (By changing *-et* of both conjugations into *-am*.) How is the *future perfect* of all the conjugations formed in the first person? [(d) All verbs change *-it* into *-o*.] How is the first person in the *perfect tense* of verbs formed? [(e) All change *-it* into *-i*.] How are the *second persons* sing. and plur. of the *perfect* formed? [(f) All verbs change *-it* into *-isti* for the singular, and into *-istis* for the plural.] How do the *imperfect* and *pluperfect* form their several persons? [(g) Change *t* of the third person into these several endings:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
-m	-s	(-t)	-mus	-tis	-nt.]

How do the other tenses form their remaining persons *singular* and *plural*? [(g) According to the general table above.]—141. Go through the whole of the forms.

EXERCISE 12.

142.

Vicinus-a-um, neighbouring.	Natio, G. nationis, <i>f.</i> nation.
Conditio, G. -onis, <i>f.</i> condition.	Miles, G. militis, <i>m.</i> , soldier.
Pretium, G. -i, price, sum of money.	Mensis, G. mensis, a month.
Utilis, <i>m. & f.</i> utile, <i>neut.</i> , useful. (Compared regularly, 104, a.)	Decem, <i>undeclined</i> , ten.
Miser-era-erum, adj., miserable.	Invit-āre, to invite.
	Describ-ēre, (126, b) to divide.
	Dimitt-ēre, (126, d) to dismiss.
	Amitt-ēre, (126, d) to lose.
	In, prep. <i>in</i> (with <i>abl.</i>); <i>into</i> (with <i>acc.</i>)

(a) The nom. of pronouns is seldom expressed, the termination of the verb being a sufficient mark of the person: but

(b) When *emphasis* is required, or a *difference* in the persons, they must be expressed.

Tu dixisti nihil, nihil audivisti (52). Vicinas urbi nationes invitavimus. Nostram conditionem miserriam putavimus. Ego misi viros, pueros tu misisti. Vos pretio milites dimiseratis. Nimium pecuniæ non amisero. Quid novi (138) audivisti? Non dicam. Cleopatram reginam Egypti duxeras-uxorem (128).

143. Example. Rem exposui.
The affair I have exposed.

I have heard nothing. You thought your-own (131, a) condition most-miserable. We had-invited the more-neighbouring nations to the city. We sent the most-useful boys, and you had sent the most-friendly men. Numa divided the year into ten months (129). I shall-have-written the letter. Knowledge is more-excellent than (omit *quam*) gold. We have lost too-much time (137).

LESSON 12.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRONOUN *Hic*.

144. The IMPERATIVE MOOD, which commands, has usually only the second person, which is in two forms; these are obtained in all the conjugations by dropping *-re* of the infinitive for the *first form*²³, and changing *-re* into *-to* for the *second form*; thus,

	I. conj.	II. conj.
<i>Infinitive</i>	am-āre	mon-ēre
<i>Imperative</i>	am-ā, am-āto	mon-ē, mon-ēto.

	III. conj.	IV. conj.
<i>Infinitive</i>	reg-ere	aud-ire
<i>Imperative</i>	reg-ē, reg-ito	aud-ī, aud-ito.

(In *reg-ito*, the *e* is changed to *i*.)

145. The plural is made by adding *-te* to the singular.

²³ *Dico, duco, facio, fero*, make their imperatives by dropping the whole of the infinitive ending (*ere*), as *dic, duc, fac, fer*.

	I.		II.
<i>Singular</i>	<i>amā amāto</i>	<i>monē monēto</i>	
<i>Plural</i>	<i>amū-tē amātō-tē</i>	<i>monē-tē monētō-te.</i>	

	III.		IV.
<i>Singular</i>	<i>regē regito</i>	<i>audī audito</i>	
<i>Plural</i>	<i>regī-tē regitō-tē</i>	<i>audī-te auditō-tē.</i>	

[The other persons are supplied by the present subjunctive ²⁶.]

146. For the third person *sing.* and *plur.* the *present subjunctive* is generally used ; but there is another form made by adding *o* to the third persons *singular* and *plural* of the present indicative ; thus,

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>amāto</i>	<i>monēto</i>	<i>regito</i>	<i>audito</i> ²⁷
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>amanto</i>	<i>monento</i>	<i>regunto</i>	<i>audiunto.</i>

147. "Not" with imperatives is always to be expressed by "*ne*," and "*nor*" by "*neve*."

To all imperatives allot

A "*ne*" whenever there 's a "*not*."

Whenever "*nor*" occurs, employ

A "*neve*," to be right, my boy.

148. (a) The pronoun *Hic*, "this," is thus declined.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	<i>hic</i>	<i>hæc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	Nom.	<i>hi</i>	<i>hæc hæc</i>
Gen.	<i>hujus</i>	<i>(m. f. n.)</i>		Gen.	<i>horum</i>	<i>harum horum</i>
Dat.	<i>huic</i>	<i>(m. f. n.)</i>		Dat.	} <i>his</i>	<i>(m. f. n.)</i>
Alb.	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hæc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	Abl.		
Acc.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	Acc.	<i>hos</i>	<i>has hæc</i>

(b) *Hic*, *this*, in contrasted notions with *ille*, *that*, denotes "*the latter*," "*the nearer*;" and *ille* denotes the more remote, "*the former*."

²⁶ The *present subjunctive* is always used as a softened imperative to express a *wish*, *request*, *precept*, or with "*ne*," to express a *prohibition*.

²⁷ This form is also of the second person ; and the second forms are only used when solemnity of speech is required.

149. *Iste* and *is* hold a middle place. *Iste* generally has reference to the person addressed, and is always used when *contempt* or *indignation* is signified: *Is* does not denote place, but refers to something mentioned or to be defined by the *relative*; and is always the pronoun preceding the relative *qui, quæ, quod*.

150. Nouns denoting the *point* of time, *when*, must be in the *ablative* (without a preposition); *duration* or *extent* of time, *how long*, in the *accusative* (without a prep.)²⁸; as,

Abl. { Venit tertiâ horâ.
 { He came at three o'clock.
Acc. { Mansit paucos dies.
 { He stayed a few days.

151. (a) Names of towns and the place *where* must be in the *genitive* for *singulars* of the first and second declensions.

(b) *Plural* nouns, and all other declensions, must be in the *ablative*; as,

Romæ. consules; *Athenis*, archontes; *Carthagine*
At Romæ, consuls; *at Athens*, archons; *at Carthage*
suffetes quotannis creabantur.
suffetes were yearly created.

(c) After verbs of motion, the *accusative* must be used: before *towns* or small islands omit the preposition; before *countries* put *in* or *ad*.

Without { Venit Romam. | With { Fugit in Asiam.
 prep. { He came to Rome. | prep. { He fled to Asia.

152. The place *from* or *whence* must be in the *ablative*; as,

Corintho venit Romam
 From-Corinth he-came to-Rome.

²⁸ The *acc.* with *in* expresses the *point* or *duration* of time *for* or *against*; with *ad*, the time *at* which anything is done.

QUESTIONS.

144. What does the imperative mood? (Command.) What are its persons? (Only the second.) How is it formed? (By dropping *-re* of the Infinitive.) How is the plural formed? (145. By adding *-te* to the singular.) How are the other persons supplied? (By the present subjunctive.)—146. How is “*not*” expressed with the imperative?—147. Decline *hic*.—148. What is the difference between *hic* and *ille*?—129. What is the difference between *iste* and *is*? (*Iste* refers to the person addressed; *is* refers to something mentioned, or to be defined.)—150. In what case is time *when* put? (Ablative.) how long? (Accusative.)—151. In what case is the place *where*? ([*a*] In the gen. singulars of the first and second declensions; [*b*] plurals and other declensions in the ablative.) What case is used after verbs of motion? (Accusative [*c*] towns and small islands without the preposition; countries with a preposition, *in* or *ad*.)—152. In what case is the place *from* put? (Ablative.)

EXERCISE 13.

153.

Dictator, G. *-toris*, a dictator.Finis, G. *-nis*, an end.Percontator, G. *-toris*, an inquisitive person.Posterus-*a-um*, adj. next.Templum, G. *i*, a temple.Jucundus-*a-um*, adj. delightful.Duo, duæ, duo, pl. two. (Note ⁴⁶)Impon-*ere*, (-posui, -positum,) to put.Red-*ire*, to return.Man-*ere*, (-nsi, -nsum,) to remain.Primus-*a-um*, adj. first.Idem, eadem, idem, the same, (declined like *is* (132).)Athēnæ, G. *-arum*, pl. Athens, a city of Greece.Multus-*a-um*, adj. many.Vesper, G. *-ëris*, evening.Fuit, perf. of *sum*, was, has been.Fug-*ere*, (fugi, -itum,) to avoid, fly.Aspic-*ere*, to behold, see.Ædific-*are*, to build.Neque—neque, *neither—nor*.

154. Example.

Priscus circum Romæ ædificavit, et ludos

Priscus the circus at Rome built, and games

Romanos instituit.

Roman instituted.

[Priscus built the circus at Rome, and instituted the Roman games.]

Dictator *Romæ* primus fuit Lartius. Finem *codem tempore* impone labori. Semper percontatorem fugito. Darius ex *Europâ* in *Asiam* postero die redivit. Aspicce *Athen's* templa. Corinthi multos annos ne manete. *Aliquid temporis* (137) manebo. *Asia* jucundior est *Europâ*. (110, a.)

"*Not*," accompanying an imperative mood, has *do* before it in English which is not expressed in Latin.

Numa built many temples *at-Rome*. Behold the *most delightful* cities of Asia. Regulus came from Rome to-Carthage *in-the-evening* (150). Fly from Europe into Asia (151, c) *the next day*. Behold-ye (143, a) the enemy *at this time*. *Do not* remain at-Corinth (151, a) two years (150). *Neither* build a circus at-Carthage *nor* a temple at-Rome; *the former* (148) is in-Africa, *the latter* is in Europe. I have no silver (137). Give to me (dat.) a little money (137). I will remain at Corinth *some time*.

LESSON 13.

SUBJUNCTIVE AND POTENTIAL MOODS.

PRONOUN *Qui*.

155. The SUBJUNCTIVE and POTENTIAL moods are in *form* alike, but in *government* different.

(a) The SUBJUNCTIVE is always subjoined to another verb by some *conjunction*, or indefinite word; such as *ut, qui, &c.*

(b) The POTENTIAL indicates power, and expresses some *contingency*²³.

Subj. (a) Veni, ut *legerem*.
 I came, that I might read (or to read).

²³ The *present* potential expresses *may, can, will, and shall*. The *imperfect* potential, *might, could, would, and should*.

Pot. (b) Legerem, si necesse esset
I would-read, if necessary it-were. [If it were necessary.]

In the former sentence *legerem* is subjunctive; in the latter, *legerem* is potential.

156. The *Subjunctivo tenses* in the third person for *not-completed actions* have the *root* of the infinitive.

For **PRES.** add to the root, I. -ē **II.** -ēt **III.** -āt **IV.** -ūt; as,

I. am-et **II.** mon-et **III.** reg-at **IV.** aud-iat.

For **IMPERF.** add *t* to the complete infinitive of each,
 am-āret mon-ēret reg-āret aud-īret.

Completed actions have the *root* of the *perfect indicative*.

For **PERF.** change perf. indic. -it into -ērīt,
 amav-ērīt monu-ērīt rex-ērīt audiv-ērīt.

For **PLUPERF.** change perf. indic. -it into -isset,
 amav-isset monu-isset rex-isset audiv-isset.

The third *persons plural* are regular; that is, take *n* before the *t*.

157. The relative pronoun for *who*, *which*, and *that*, *whose*, and *whom*, is *qui*, which is thus declined:

Singular.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	
Nom.	qui	quæ	quod	(<i>who, which, and that</i>)
Gen.	cujus			(<i>whose, or of which</i>)
Dat.	cui			(<i>to whom or which</i>)
Abl.	quo	quâ	quo	(<i>by whom or which</i>)
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	(<i>whom, or which</i>).

Plural.

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom.	qui	quæ	quæ
Gen.	quorum	quarum	quorum
Dat.	} quibus		
Abl.			
Acc.	quos	quas	quæ.

158. The relative (*qui, quæ, quod*,) must be of the same *gender, number, and person*, as the noun it refers to in the sentence going before it ²⁰.

[That is, it agrees in every thing, *but case*, with its *antecedent*.]

159. The *case* of the *relative* is governed by some word in *its own* sentence; if a pronoun attend it, it is *is, ea, id*. (or some one of its cases.)

160. A *purpose* must be expressed by *ut* (that) with the *subjunctive*: this in English is usually expressed by the infinitive; as in the sentence 155 (*a*), which expresses a *purpose*.

<i>Eng.</i>	I came	<i>to-read.</i>	(Infin.)	
<i>Lat.</i>	I came	<i>that</i>	<i>I-might-read.</i>	} (Subj.)
	Veni	<i>ut</i>	<i>legerem.</i>	

QUESTIONS.

155. What is the difference in the subjunctive and potential mood? What is the use of the subjunctive? (*a*.) What, of the potential? (*b*.)—156. What form do the subjunctive tenses take? (The pre-ent and imperfect take the root of the infinitive, and the perfect and pluperfect take the root of the perfect indicative.) Form the third persons singular of these tenses. How are the third persons plural formed?—157. Decline the relative *qui, quæ, quod*.—158. What does the relative agree with? (Its *antecedent*, which is the noun going before it.) How? (In gender, number, and person.)—159. How does the relative get its *case*? (By government of some word in its own sentence.)—160. How is a *purpose* to be expressed? (By *ut* with the *subjunctive*.) How is it expressed in English? (By the infinitive)

EXERCISE 14.

161.	
Is, <i>ea, id</i> , he, she, it.	Homo, G. - <i>inis</i> , man or woman
Memor, G. - <i>ris</i> , mindful.	(one of the human species).

²⁰ The noun to which the relative refers sometimes follows it. When no other nominative in Latin or English is between the *rel.* and the *verb*, then the *rel.* is nom. to the verb.

Beneficium, G. -cii, kindness.	Miles, G. -itis, a soldier.
Dorm-ire, to sleep.	Oppidum, G. -idi, town.
Vid-ere (vidi. visum), to see.	Ven-ire, (veni, <i>perf.</i>) to come.
Ex-ire, (ii, itum,) to depart.	Jub-ere, (jussi, <i>perf.</i>) to order.
Certio ^{re} m fac-ere, to inform (to make a man more certain).	

162. Example.

Hoc agit ut se conservet.

This he does that himself he-may-preserve.

[This he does to preserve himself.]

Eos amamus qui sint memores³¹ beneficii. Homo qui dormivit. Veni, ut Trojæ reginam viderem. Regem vidi, qui Romam venit. Puerum imperat, ut exeat. Venit (*perf.*) ut me certio^{re}m-faceret. Æneas reginam amavisset. Homines audiret. Regat milites. Moneo ut domum exeat. Milites ad regem veni-runt, ut oppidum conservaret. Hoc ago, ut bene dormiam. Me jubet vespere venire Carthaginem (*jubeo* takes *acc.* and *infn.*; not *ut* and *subj.*).

163. The *present* subjunctive must follow the *present* and *future* tenses³². The *imperfect* subjunctive must follow the *past* tenses. (*Imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect.*)

"Not" with subjunctive present must be "no;"

With future perfect too 'tis found to be.

I am come *to-see* (160) the king of Troy. He advises the boy *to-learn*. Cæsar sent a soldier *to-see* the town. The king may-hear (those who are) *mindful* of a kindness. He should-sleep. I would-advise the queen *to-come* to Rome (151, c). He has *too much* money (137). He might hear *his* (134) son.

³¹ Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind govern a *genitive*.

³² There is no *future* in the *subjunctive*; what is usually placed there is an *indicative* tense; the future subjunctive is supplied by the participle in *-rus* and the present potential of *esse*: *as, amaturus sim; amaturus sis; amaturus sit; &c.* (See 141 66)

LESSON 14.

THE VERB *Esse*, TO BE.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

164. The tenses for *not-completed* actions (*pres.*, *imp.*, and *fut.*) of *esse* in the third persons *indicative* are,

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Present,</i>	<i>est</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>sunt</i> , are.
<i>Imperfect,</i>	<i>erat</i>	<i>was</i>	(regular, with <i>n</i> before the <i>t</i> .)
<i>Future,</i>	<i>erit</i>	<i>will be</i>	<i>erunt</i> .

165. The tenses for *completed* actions (*perf.*, *pluperf.*, and *fut. perf.*) are all formed from another root, *fu*²³, (Greek, *φύω*,) which affixes the usual endings; thus,

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Perfect,</i>	<i>fuit</i>	<i>has been</i>	<i>fu-erunt</i> , or <i>fu-ere</i> .
<i>Pluperf. et,</i>	<i>fuerat</i>	<i>had been</i>	} (regular, <i>n</i> be- fore <i>t</i> .)
<i>Fut. perf.,</i>	<i>fuerit</i>	<i>shall have been</i>	

²³ The root *fu-* is an ingredient in all active verbs for the tenses of the *completed* actions. (*Perf.*, *pluperf.*, *fut. perf.*) In the 1st, 2nd, and 4th conjugations; thus,

<i>I have been to love.</i>	<i>I have been to advise.</i>	<i>I have been to hear.</i>
I. <i>amare-fui</i>	II. <i>monere-fui</i>	IV. <i>audire-fui.</i>
<i>ama-fui</i>	<i>mone-fui</i>	<i>audi-fui.</i>
<i>ama-ri</i>	<i>mon-ui</i>	<i>audi-ri.</i>
<i>ama-fueram</i>	<i>mons-fueram</i>	<i>audi-fueram.</i>
<i>ama-eram</i>	<i>mon-ueram</i>	<i>audi-eram.</i>
also,		
<i>ama-fuero</i>	<i>mone-fuero</i>	<i>audi-fuero.</i>
<i>ama-rero</i>	<i>mon-uero</i>	<i>audi-rero.</i>
<i>ama-fuerim</i>	<i>mone-fuerim</i>	<i>audi-fuerim.</i>
<i>ama-rerim</i>	<i>mon-uerim</i>	<i>audi-rerim.</i>
<i>ama-fuissem</i>	<i>mone-fuissem</i>	<i>audi-fuissem.</i>
<i>ama-uissem</i>	<i>mon-uissem</i>	<i>audi-uissem.</i>
<i>ama-fuisse</i>	<i>mone-fuisse</i>	<i>audi-fuisse.</i>
<i>ama-uisse</i>	<i>mon-uisse</i>	<i>audi-uisse.</i>

166. All parts of *esse* have the same case *after* them as *before* them ; as,

Eng. *Cæsar is emperor.*

Lat. *Cæsar est imperator.*

167. *Unus*, *one*, and some other pronominal adjectives, are thus declined :

SINGULAR.				
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	
NOM.	<i>unus</i>	<i>unā</i>	<i>unum</i>	} The <i>plural</i> is declined like other adjectives of <i>three</i> terminations.
VOC.	<i>uno</i>			
GEN.	<i>unūs</i>			
DAT.	<i>unī</i>			
ABL.	<i>uno</i>	<i>unā</i>	<i>uno</i>	
ACC.	<i>unum</i>	<i>-am</i>	<i>-um.</i>	

[*Unus* has a *plural* when joined to plurals expressing individuals as *one* aggregate, and with nouns having *no singular*.]

168. Like *unus*, go through *alius*³⁴, *ullus*,
Alter (*alterius*), *uter*,
*Uterlibet*³⁵, *uterque*, *-vis*, and *nullus*,
 With *totus*, *solus*, *neuter*³⁶.

³⁴ *Alius* makes *aliud* in the *neut. gen. sing.*

³⁵ In these compounds of *uter*,—*uterlibet*, *uterque*, *utervis*, the *-libet*, *-que*, and *-vis* are unchanged.

³⁶ This list of adjective pronouns will be useful.—Note, those in *-er* express *one of two*.

Quis	{ <i>which</i> (of many).
Uter	{ <i>whether or which</i> (of two).
Unus	{ <i>one</i> (of many).
Alter	{ <i>one</i> (of two).
Nullus	{ <i>none</i> (of many).
Neuter	{ <i>neither</i> (of two).
Quilibet or quivis	{ <i>any</i> (of many).
Quisquam or ullus	{ <i>either</i> (of two).
Uterlibet or utervis	{ <i>every one</i> (of many).
Quisque	{ <i>each</i> (of two).
Uterque	{ <i>whichever</i> } (of many).
Quisquis or quicunque	{ <i>whosoever</i> }
Utercunque	{ <i>whethersocver</i> (of two).

QUESTIONS.

164. What are the tenses for the *not-completed* actions of *esse* in the third person?—165. What are the tenses for the *completed* actions of *esse* in the third person?—166. What cases follow the parts of *esse*?—169. Decline *unus*, one.—168. What words are declined like *unus*? What does *alius* make in the neut. gen. sing.? (*Aliud*.) Are the endings in the compounds of *uter*, namely, *-libet*, *-que*, and *-vis*, declined? (*No.*)

Exercise: 15.

169. Mora, G. morā, delay.
 Dux, G. ducis, a general (inferior to *imperator*).
 Ille, illa, illud, *pr.* he, she, it.
 Ebrietas, G. ebrietātis, *f.* drunkenness.
 Insania, G. insaniā, madness.
 Usus, G. usūs, use.
 Præceptor, G. præceptoris, teacher.
 Beatus, beata, beatum, *adj.* happy.
 Mens, G. ment-is, *f.* mind (intellect).
 Animus, G. anim-i, *m.* mind (sentiments, passions).
 Potestas, G. potestatis, *f.* power.
 Nullus, nulla, nullum, *pr.* no one.
 Alius, alia, aliud, *pr.* one another (one of many).
 (*alius—alius, one—another.*)
 Alter, altera, alterum, *pr.* another (one of two).
 (*alter—alter, one—the other.*)
 Nunc, } *conj.* now, at this present time.
 Jam, }
 Sed, *conj.* but (denotes transition, change of subject ;
 autem, but, denotes addition, moreover, too).
 Fulg-ēre, (*fulsi*), to shine.

170. Example.

Mens sapientis semper erit tranquilla.

The-mind of-a-wise-man always will be tranquil.

*Est Deus. Jam mora est. Dux ille erat. Ebrietas est insania. Usus est praeceptor. Sapiens erit semper beatus. Illa regina fuerat. Unus erit, in quo fulgeat*³⁷ *virtus. Homines utilissimi fuerunt. Quid*

37 *Unus* or *solus* joined with *qui*,
Require *subjunctive*, by-the-by.

novi? (138.) Aliquid temporis (137) est. *Potestas fuerit. Fuit Romæ.*

171. When only one nominative is expressed with *est*, it may often be taken after the verb, and the verb *est*, &c., may be rendered *there is*; *there was*; &c.: as,

Est Deus—there is a God.

Wise men *are* always happy. She *was* a queen most-beautiful. *There-is* a God. *There-is* no-one now. *There-was* one. *There-will-be* another (of many). It is *too-much* money (137). The boys *are* good now, but *have been* bad. *They-will-be* useful soldiers, who (158, 159) came *to-Rome* (151, c). He comes *to-see* the queen (160).

LESSON 15.

SUBJUNCTIVE OF *Esse*.

IRREGULAR COMPARATIVES.

172. The *present* and *imperfect* tenses subjunctive of *sum* are in the third person singular,

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Present</i> , Sit,	it may or can be,	} take <i>n</i> before the <i>t</i> .
<i>Imperf.</i> } <i>Esset</i> , or } <i>Foret</i> , }	it might or could be,	

173. The *perfect* and *pluperfect* tenses are formed from the root *fu-* as in the indicative;

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> 3 pers. <i>Fuerit</i> ,	it should have been,	} taken before the <i>t</i> .
<i>Plup.</i> „ <i>Fuisset</i> ,	it would have been,	

174. (a) Certain *adjectives* are of very irregular comparison, and must be learned by heart²⁵.

²⁵ When comparatives are used without another subject to be compared with they are rendered in English by *too* or *somewhat* for the

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Bonus, <i>good</i>	melior, <i>better</i>	optimus, <i>best</i>
Malus, <i>bad</i>	pejor, <i>worse</i>	pessimus, <i>worst</i>
Magnus, <i>great</i>	major, <i>greater</i>	maximus, <i>greatest</i>
Parvus, <i>little</i>	minor, <i>less</i>	minimus, <i>least</i>
Multus ³⁹ , <i>much</i>	plus, <i>more</i>	plurimus, <i>most</i>

(b) Adjectives in *-ius*, *-inus*, *-itus*, and *-orus*, are not compared.

We say *pius*, *godly*, *magis* *pius*, *more* *godly*; *maxime* or *valde* *pius*, *most* or *very* *godly*; employing the terms *magis* for the comparative, and *maxime* or *valde* for the superlative⁴⁰.

175. After the parts of the verb *to be* in English, the words *part*, *duty*, *mark*, *business*, *character*, are omitted, and the noun following takes the *genitive* as in English; as

<i>English.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>
It is <i>the part</i> of a king	} It is of a king. <i>Est regis.</i>
It is <i>the mark</i> of a king	
It is <i>the business</i> of a king	
It is <i>the character</i> of a king	
It is <i>incumbent on</i> a king	

There are other words employed in the same way; as, "It is *the lot* of;" "It is *the office* of;" "It is *the property* of;" "It *belongs to*," &c., all which are followed by a *genitive*.

176. In translating the Latin, put one of the above English words before the *genitive*.

comparative, and *very* for the superlative; as *doctior*, too or somewhat learned; *doctissimus*, very learned.

³⁹ *Multus* followed by another adjective requires *et*, though not so in English; as

<i>English.</i>	Many great men.
<i>Latin.</i>	Multi <i>et</i> magni viri.
[Many and great men.]	

⁴⁰ Adjectives compounded with *-dus*, *-ficus*, *-vulus* (from *dico*, *facio*, *colo*) form their comparatives in *-entior*; and superlatives in *-entissimus*; as *malevolus*, *malevolentior*—*malevolentissimus*.

QUESTIONS.

172. Which are the *present* and *imperfect* tenses subjunctive, third persons, of *sum*?—173. From what root are the *perfect* and *pluperfect* tenses of the subjunctive of *sum* derived? (From the root *fu-*.) What are the *perfect* and *pluperfect* tenses third persons?—174. (a) Repeat the adjectives having *irregular* comparison? (b) What adjectives are compared by *magis* and *maxime* or *valde*?—175. What words are omitted in turning English into Latin after the parts of the verb *to be*? Translate "*est regis*" in all the English ways.—176. What does *multus* require after it? (Note ³⁶.) What do *unus* and *solus* with *qui*, require? (Note ³⁷.)

EXERCISE 16.

177. Sapiens, G. *sapientis*, *adj.* wise.
 Insipiens, G. *insipient-is*, *adj.* foolish.
 Liberi, G. *liberorum*, plu. children.
 Error, G. *errōris*, m. error.
 Judex, G. *judic-is*, a judge.
 Parens, G. *parent-is*, (*com. gender*) a parent.
 Par-ēre, par-ui, to obey (followed by a *dative*).
 Put-āre, to think.
 Persever-āre, to persevere.
 Al-ēre, to nourish.
 Imper-āre, to command or govern (foll. by a *dative*).

Est sui juris, he is his own master.

178. *Filia esset maxima regina. Plurimi sint boni. Filia est matrem amare. Bonorum puerorum est magistris parēre* (177). *Fuissent optimi. Iste puer sit pessimus. Est sapientis putare. Est insipientis in errore perseverare. Optimi judicis est. Non esset judex. Minores sint meliores. Majores in errore perseveravērunt.*

179. When *est* requires a *genitive*
 Then follows an *infinitive*.

Example.

Militum est suo duci parēre.
Of soldiers it-is their leader to-obey.

[It is *the duty* of soldiers to obey their leader.]

It is *the duty* of parents to-nourish (their) children. (He) may-be *the-best* judge. It is *the mark* of a wise-man not to persevere (179) in error. It is *the duty* of a Christian to be *very pious*. It is *the business* of a king to govern the people (*dativē*). He is *his own master*. The daughter *would-have-been* very-beautiful (*superl.*). The boys should-have-been *better*. The children are *too learned*. (Note ².) He may-be *the-worst* of-all (*gen.*). There-is *little time* (137).

LESSON 16.

THE VERB *Esse* (continued).

(First and Second persons, and *Imperative*.)

180. The *first* and *second persons* of the *present tense* of *sum* apply the usual terminations irregularly, and must be learnt by heart ⁴¹; they are,

⁴¹ In the ancient form of this tense, according to Varro, (L.L. ix. 100.) the terminations seem to comply with the general rule of changing -t of the third person into

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1.	2.	(3.)	1.	2.	(3.)
-m	-s	(-t)	-mus	-tis	(-nt)

thus, with the aid of some vowel, we have

The old form from Varro.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Singular.</i>		
1. (e)sum			esum		
2. es'(es)			estis		
3. est			estis		
<i>Plural.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1. (e)sumus			esumus		
2. es-tis			estis		
3. (e)sunt			esunt		

PRESENT TENSE—INDICATIVE.

Singular.

1. Sum, I *am*
2. Es, thou *art*
- (3. Est, he *is*)

Plural.

1. Sumus, we *are*
2. Estis, ye *are*
- (3. Sunt, they *are*).

181. The *first* and *second* persons of the other tenses of *sum* are formed by changing the *t* of the third person sing. of each tense into the endings; as in (140)

*Singular.**Plural.*

1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3. ⁴²
-m	-s	(-t)	-mus	-tis	(nt)
(Perf. -i)	(Perf. -sti)		(Perf. -stis)		
(Fut. -o)					

182. The IMPERATIVE of *sum* is formed in the regular way (by rules 145, 146) by dropping -*se* (which = the -*re* of other verbs) of the infinitive for the

42 INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Present.</i>	Sum	es	(est)	Sumus	estis	(sunt)
<i>Imperf.</i>	era-m	era-s	(erat)	era-mus	eratis	(erant)
<i>Future.</i>	er-o	er-is	(erit)	eri-mus	eritis	(erunt)
From root <i>fu-</i> (φύω).						
<i>Perfect.</i>	fui	fui-sti	(fuit)	fui-mus	fui-stis	(fuerunt) (orsuere)
<i>Pluperf.</i>	fueram	fueras	(fuerat)	fueramus	fueratis	(fuerant)
<i>Fu. Prf.</i>	fuiro	fueris	(fuerit)	fuerimus	fueritis	(fuerint)

POTENTIAL AND SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Present.</i>	Sim	sis	(sit)	Simus	sitis	(sint)
<i>Imperf.</i>	essem	esses	(esset)	essemus	essetis	(essent)
or, forem	fores	(foret)		—*	—	(forent)
<i>Perfect.</i>	fuerim	fueris	(fuerit)	fuerimus	fueritis	(fuerint)
<i>Pluperf.</i>	fuissem	fuissets	(fuisset)	fuissemus	fuissetis	(fuisissent)

* The first and second persons plural of *forem* are found in no classic

first form; and changing it into *-to* for the second form; as from *esse* comes

	Singular.	Plural.
Imperat. 2nd pers.	es esto	esto estote.

Add *to* to the singular, to get the plural.

The third person has a form by adding *o* to the third person of the present indie.; the other persons are borrowed from the pres. subj.

183. When the pronouns *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*, precede the words *duty, mark, business, &c.*, which follow *est*, they must be in the *neuter gender, nominative* case, and *not* in the genitive (by rule 175); as

ENGLISH.	LATIN.
It is <i>my duty</i> .	est <i>meum</i> .
It is <i>thy duty</i> ,	est <i>tuum</i> .
It is <i>his duty</i> ,	est <i>suum</i> .
It is <i>our duty</i> ,	est <i>nostrum</i> .
It is <i>your duty</i> ,	est <i>vestrum</i> .

[The pronouns *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*, agree with some such word as *officium* or *negotium* understood.]

QUESTIONS.

180. Go through the present tense of *sum*.—181. How are the first and second persons of the other tenses formed?—182. What is the imperative of *sum*?—183. Are the pronouns *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their*, coming before *mark, duty, &c.*, after *est* to be in the genitive? (No: in the *nominative neuter*; as, *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*.)

EXERCISE 17.

184.

Pars, G. <i>partis</i> , <i>f.</i> a part.	Iter, G. <i>itineris</i> , <i>n.</i> a journey.
Eques, G. <i>equis</i> , a horseman,	Improbus- <i>a-um</i> , adj. wicked.
knight.	Pauper- <i>era-erum</i> , adj. poor.

Gubern-äre, to govern.

Lēg-ēre (legi, lectum), to read.

Pun-īre, to punish.

Fac-ēre (feci, factum), to make.

Dic-ēre, (dixi, ctum,) to speak,
say.

Septem, undecl. seven.

Id temporis, at that time, } are used *adverbially*, without any go-
Id ætatis, at that age, } vernment, for *eo tempore*, *et ætate*.

Homo es. Ego sum Davus. Sumus optimi Romæ.
Tuum est id facere. Meum est gubernare. Magna
pars fui. Non sum equitum magister. Id ætatis rex
fuisses. Veni Romam, ut reginam viderem. Veniet
tertiâ horâ, ut regem videat Carthagine (151, b). Sep-
tem annos manebo. Id temporis. Non puer eram.
Esto brevis. Superbe respondebat, et crudeliter im-
perabat.

185. Example.

Est tuum iter facere.

It is *your-duty* the journey to-make.

[It is your duty to make the journey.]

It is *our duty* to read, *yours* (52) to write. *You*
were good at that age, we will-be better (174). *It is*
his business to-punish the-wicked. (*plu.*) *It is my*
-duty to-speak. *It is our duty* to obey the king. (*dat.*)
I came to-Carthage (151, c) at-that-time to-see (160.
163) Regulus⁴³. *I shall-be* the poorest (104, b) (man),
but *you have-been* the wisest. *Be ye* wise. He will-
remain at Carthage (151, d) four days (150). *It is*
your duty to hear, and *mine* to-speak. *Be* good.

LESSON 17.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRICE IN THE GENITIVE OR ABLATIVE.

186. The *infinitive* expresses the *condition* of actions,
not *time*; its tenses are formed from the roots,—1st,

⁴³ Regulus, *gen.* Reguli, a Roman of great courage and exalted
honour, but a martyr to Carthaginian vengeance.

of the *not-completed* actions; 2nd, of the *completed* actions.

187. The *present* and *imperfect* tenses are, in

I. CONJ.	II. CONJ.	III. CONJ.	IV. CONJ.
-āre	-ēre	-ĕre	-īre.

188. (a) The *perfect* and *pluperfect* tenses are formed from the third person singular of the *perfect* tenses *indicative*, by changing *-it* into *-isse*; as,

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
<i>Perf. ind.</i>	amav- <i>it</i>	monu- <i>it</i>	rex- <i>it</i>	audiv- <i>it</i> .
<i>Perf. and pluperf. infinitive.</i> }	amav- <i>isse</i>	monu- <i>isse</i>	rex- <i>isse</i>	audiv- <i>isse</i> .

(b) *Svm* makes its *infinitive* irregular in the *present* and *imperfect*, which is *esse*, to be: the *perfect* and *pluperfect* are regular, *fu-isse*, to have been.

189. (a) **ADJECTIVES**, when they express the *cost*, *price*, or *value*, are put in the *genitive*; as,

Æstimo te magni.

I value you much.

(b) **SUBSTANTIVES** expressing the *cost*, *price*, or *value*, are put in the *ablative*; as,

Vendidit patriam auro.

He-sold his country for gold.

190. These *genitive adjectives* are,

<i>Magni</i> , at much, or a great (price).	<i>Minoris</i> , at less.
<i>Permagni</i> , at very much.	<i>Minimi</i> , at the least, or very little.
<i>Maximi</i> , at very much.	<i>Parvi</i> , at a little (price).
<i>Plurimi</i> , at the most, or very much.	<i>Pluris</i> , at more, or of more value.

Tanti—*quantum*, so much—as.

*Tanti*⁴¹, so much . . . *quantum*⁴¹, how much.

⁴¹ And their compounds, *tantidem*, just so much; *quantivis*, *quantilibet*, for as much as you please; *quanticunque*, for how much soever.

Also these *genitives* may be added,

Pendere	}	<i>nihili,</i>	to reckon at <i>nothing</i> .
Facere			
Ducere			
Facere	}	<i>floci,</i>	to reckon at a <i>lock of wool</i> .
Æstimare			
Facere	}	<i>nauci,</i>	to reckon at a <i>nutshell</i> .
Habere			
Facere	}	<i>pili,</i>	to reckon at a <i>hair</i> .
Habere			
Facere		<i>teruncii,</i>	to reckon at a <i>farthing</i> .
Facere	}	<i>assis,</i>	to reckon at a <i>penny</i> .
Æstimare			
Facere		<i>hujus,</i>	to reckon at <i>this</i> .
Non ducere		<i>pensi,</i>	to reckon at <i>no weight</i> .

191. After *know, think, feel, hear, say, and see*,
An *accusative* with its *infinitive* must be;
The English "*that*," beyond a doubt,
You must, in Latin, then *leave out*.

As, I hear (*that*) *he is good*.
Audio *eum esse bonum*.

QUESTIONS.

186. How are the tenses of the infinitive formed?—187. What are the *present* and *imperfect* tenses infinitive?—188. (a) How are the *perfect* and *pluperfect* tenses infinitive formed? What is the infinitive of *sum*? (b)—189. In what case is the *price* or *value* of any thing put? (If an adjective, in the *genitive* (a); if a substantive, in the *ablative*.) (b)—190. What are these *genitive* adjectives? What verbs require an *accusative* with *infinitive*? (191.)—What is to be done with the word "*that*?"

EXERCISE 18.

192. *Libra*, G. -æ, a pound.
Pecunia, G. -æ, money, property ("coined money" is *nummus*).
Conscientia, G. -æ, conscience.
Dolor, G. -ōris, *m.* pain.
Pretium, G. *pretii*, *n.* a price.
Talentum, G. -nti, *n.* a talent.
Sanguis, G. *sanguinis*, *m.* blood.

Vulnus, G. vulnēris, *n.* a wound.
 Pœni, G. Pœnorum, *pl.* Carthaginians.
 Victoria, G. -æ, victory.
 Put-āre, to think or reckon.
 Doc-ēre, to teach.
 Stāre, (*perf.* steti,) to stand, cost.
 Em-ēre, (*perf.* emi,) to buy.

*Magni æstimabat pecuniam. Mea mihi conscientia pluris est. Minimi putavit virtutem. Dixit se fuisse pauperem*⁴³. *Scio me ducere nihili virtutem. Epicurus dolorem nihili facit. Quanti me æstimas? Parvi te æstimo. Demosthenes talento docuit. Multo sanguine et vulneribus ea Pœnis victoria stetit. Fuisset minoris dixisse. Audivisse regem. Scit, reginam esso pulcherrimam. Quid nori hodie audivisti?*

Example.

Emit Canius *tanti* hortos *quanti*
 Bought Canius *for-as-much* the gardens *as*
 Pythius voluit.
 Pythius wished.

[*Canius bought the gardens for as much as Pythius wished.*]

He *reckons* virtue *at nothing*. That victory cost *much blood* (189, *b*). I shall *value* him *much*. You *do not value* me *for-as-much as* I value you. He values the man *at-a-great* (price). I *do not reckon* him *at a nutshell*. I know *that I am* (191) poor. He said *that the boy* was idle (166). To-have-taught: to-have-said: to-have-been. What news? (138.) I bought the book *for gold* (189, *b*). It-cost *two*⁴⁴ pounds. He said *that he* bought it *for a price*.

⁴³ In translating these accusatives and infinitives into English, put in "*that*" before the accusative; as, "*se*," that he; "*me*," that I.

⁴⁴ Duo, two, and ambo, both, are thus declined:

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
Nom. } Duo	duæ	duo.	
Voc. }			
Gen. } Duorum	duarum	duorum.	
Dat. }			
Abl. }	Duobus	duabus	duobus.
Acc. } Duo	duas	duo.	

LESSON 18.

SUPINES.

193. The *supines* of verbs end in *-tum* and *-tu* : *-tum* is *active*, expressing the action of the verb ; *-tu* is *passive*, suffering the action.

194. They are formed in the first and fourth conjugations by changing *-re* of the *present infinitive* into *-tum* and *-tu* ; as,

INFIN.	SUPINE ACTIVE.	SUPINE PASSIVE.
I. conj. am-āre	amā-tum (to love)	-tu (to be loved).
IV. conj. aud-īre	audī-tum (to hear)	-tu (to be heard).

195. In the second conjugation *ēre* of the *present infinitive* becomes *-itum* and *-itu* ; as,

INFIN.	SUPINE ACTIVE.	SUPINE PASSIVE.
mon-ēre	mon-ītum (to advise)	-itu (to be advised).

196. (a) In the third conjugation change *-ere* of the *present infinitive* into *-tum* and *-tu* ; but,

	INFIN.	SUP. ACT.	SUP. PASS.
<i>g</i> {	reg-ēre	rec-tum	rec-tu.
<i>h</i> { before <i>t</i> be-	(to rule)		
comes <i>c</i> ; as,	trah-ēre	trac-tum	trac-tu.
<i>qu</i> {	(to draw)		
	coqu-ēre	coc-tum	coc-tu.
<i>b</i> { before <i>t</i> be-	(to cook)		
comes <i>p</i> ; as,	scrib-ere	scrip-tum	scrip-tu.
<i>d</i> { changes <i>dt</i>	(to write)		
into <i>s</i> ; as,	defend-ere	defen-sum	defen-su.
	(to defend)		

[Or change the *-si* of the *perfect* into *-tum* and *-tu* ; as, *rec-si* (rexi), *rec-tum*, *rec-tu* ; *scrip-si*, *scrip-tum*, *scrip-tu*.]

(?) Others change *-si* or *-di* of the *perfect* into *-sum* and *-su*; as,

divi- <i>si</i>	divi- <i>sum</i>	divi- <i>su</i> .
de fen- <i>di</i>	defen- <i>sum</i>	defen- <i>su</i> ⁴⁷ .

197. The supine in *-um*⁴⁸ may be considered as a *substantive* of the *accusative* case governed by the preposition *ad* understood, and having an *active* signification⁴⁹.

It follows a verb expressing *motion*, and denotes the *purpose*.

198. The supine in *-u*⁴⁸ may be considered as a *substantive* in the *ablative* case governed by the preposition *in* understood, and having generally a *passive* signification, though it is often used *actively*, particularly after "*it is hard*," "*it is easy*," "*it is pleasant*," &c.

It follows an *adjective*.

QUESTIONS.

193. What do the supines of verbs end in? (*-um* and *-u*.) Which is *active*? Which, *passive*?—194. How are they formed in the first and fourth conjugations?—195. How are they formed in the second conjugation?—196. (a) How are they formed in the third conjugation? What do some verbs change *-si* and *-di* of the *perfect* into? (196. (b) *-sum* and *-su*.)—197. What may the supine in *-um* be considered? What does it follow? What, denote?—198. What may the supine in *-u* be consi-

⁴⁷ The letter *r* before *-ŕe* is considered a vowel (*u*), and follows the general rule of changing *-ŕe* of the *infin.* into *-tum* and *-tu*; as,

INFIN.	Supine in <i>-um</i> .	Supine in <i>-u</i> .
Solv- <i>ŕe</i>	solū- <i>tum</i>	solū- <i>tu</i> .

Some verbs are very irregular: *figŕe*, *fixum*; *vincŕe*, *victum*; *stringŕe*, *strictum*; particularly where the liquids (*l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, and *s*) precede *-ŕe*, some of those in *-m* only following the general rule.

⁴⁸ Latin writers do not much use the *supine*, employing in preference the *gerund* with *ad*.

⁴⁹ The supine *-um* with the verb *iri* forms the future infinitive passive. See Lesson 27. *par.* 259.

dered? What does it follow? (An *adjective*.) What signification has it? (Sometimes *passive* and sometimes *active*; whichever suits the construction better.)

EXERCISE 19.

99. Curio, G. Curio*n-is*, Curio, a Roman tribune of the people, and friend of Cæsar.

Liber, G. libr*i*, m. a book.

Gravis, grav*e*, adj. grievous, heavy.

Fœdus-a-um, adj. disgraceful.

Salut-āre, to salute.

Sc-ire, to know (from conviction, and as a matter of fact): *noscere, novi*, to know (by perception, have an idea of).

Rog-āre, to ask for.

Dic-ere, to tell, say.

Per-ferre, (*perf.* per-tuli, irreg.) to endure.

Hodie, adv. to-day.

Non modo, not only—sed etiam, but even.

200. Scito Curionem venisse me salutatum. Mit-tit rogatum libros eos, quos viderat. Regina venit te auditum. Multa dictu gravia hodie pertuli. Res erat non modo visu fœda, sed etiam auditu. Jucun-dum est visu atque auditu. Est sapientis multa discere. Erat tuum rei-publicæ legibus parère.

201. A purpose expressed in English by the infinitive may now be expressed two ways in Latin:

By rule 160, use *ut* with the *subjunctive*.

By rule 197, use the *supine* in -um.

A purpose.	{	Veni	ut regem	salutarem	(160).
		Veni	regem	salutatum	(197).
		I came the king			to-salute.

Example.

Deos salutatum Pœni venerunt.

The gods to-salute the Carthaginians came.

[The Carthaginians came to salute the gods.]

He sent to-ask-for the book. The king came to-hear the queen. He heard to-day many (things) grievous to-be-told. The boy will learn many (things) not only

disgraceful *to-be-seen* but also *to-be-heard*. Æneas came *to-salute* the fair queen of Carthage. He reckons the hawk *at-a-meal* (190) (price), virtue *at-nothing*. I value him *so-much*.

LESSON 19.

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT OR PAST IN *-tus*, AND FUTURE IN *-rus*.

202. The *perfect* or *past* participle in English ending in *-ed*, *-n*, or *-t*, is formed in Latin by changing *-m* of the supine into *-s*; as,

English, learned; *Latin*, doctus (*supine*, doctum).

203. *Participles* govern the same cases as their verbs, and when expressing the meaning of their verbs in relation to *time* do not admit of comparison; as,

Puer doctus linguam Latinam.

A boy taught the language Latin.

[A boy taught the Latin language.]

204. Without relation to *time*, participles then govern the *genitive*, and take *comparison*.

Puer doctus linguæ Latinæ.

A boy skilled in the language Latin.

[A boy skilled in the Latin language.]

Comparison.

Puer doctior linguæ Latinæ.

A boy more-skilled in the Latin language.

[The *participles* are then termed **PARTICIPIALS**.]

205. The *futuro* participle in *-rus* is formed by changing *-m* of the supine into *-rus*³⁰; as,

Supine, doctum, to teach,

Future in -rus, docturus, about-to-teach.

³⁰ The future in *-rus* is declined like *bonus*, but has no *gen. plur.* (*futurorum* and *futurarum* excepted.)

206. (a) This *future participle* also expresses a purpose, and is used with *esse* to form the *infinitive future*, agreeing with the noun or pronoun preceding⁵¹; as,

Eng. He promised *to come.*

Lat. Promisit *se venturum esse.*

[*He promised that he would come.*]

[Here *venturum* is the *fut. partic.* agreeing with *se* in the acc. case sing. mas.]

- (b) The infinitive *future* of *sum* is *foro*, or *futurum esse*, to be about to be.

207. All the *participles* in *-us* are declined like *bonus-a-um* (63), and agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case.

QUESTIONS.

202. What does the *perfect* or *past* participle end in in English? How is it formed in Latin?—203. What do participles govern? Do they admit of *comparison*?—204. When do they admit of comparison, and what do they then govern?—205. How is the *future participle* in *-rus* formed?—206. (a) What

⁵¹ The participle of the future in *-rus* with *sum*, and its various tenses, is used to denote that a person "*has a mind to do*," or, "*is upon the point of doing*" something. This, conjugated throughout, is termed the *periphrastic conjugation*; thus,

<i>Present,</i>	{ <i>Scripturus sum,</i>	<i>I am about to write, or meditate writing.</i>
	<i>Tu scripturus es,</i>	<i>Thou art about to write.</i>
	&c.	&c.
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>Ego scripturus eram,</i>	<i>I was about to write.</i>
	<i>Tu scripturus eras,</i>	<i>Thou wast about to write.</i>
	&c.	&c.
<i>Perfect,</i>	<i>Scripturus fui,</i>	<i>I have been about to write.</i>
	&c.	&c.
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>Scripturus fueram,</i>	<i>I had been about to write.</i>
	&c.	&c.
<i>Future,</i>	<i>Scripturus ero,</i>	<i>I shall be about to write.</i>
	&c.	&c.

The verb *sum* retains its own force in each tense.

. The future in *-rus* is not found with *furo*.

does the *future participle* sometimes express? How is it used with *esse*? What is the *future infinitive* of *sum*? (b)—207. How are all the participles in *-us* declined? With what do they agree? (With their nouns in gender, number, and case.)

EXERCISE 20.

205. Jupiter, G. Jovis (and other cases regular from *gen.*),
the chief of the gods.
Commeatus, G. -is, provisions.
Equus, G. equ-i, a horse.
Ludus, G. -i, a game.
Patria, G. -ae, country.
Par-āre, to procure, prepare.
Em-ĕre, (em-i, em-tum and emp-tum,) to buy.
Spect-āre, to behold, see.
Revoc-āre, to recal.

Phrase. Paucis his diebus, a few days ago.

[(a) Length of time *before* the present moment is expressed by *abhinc* with the *acc.* for duration of time; and with *obl.* for *point of time*.]

209. *Monitus; auditus: venit recturus. Misit homines commeatus paraturos. Paucis his diebus veni equum emturus. Veniam ludos spectaturus.*

Example.

Alexander ad Jovem Hammonem pergit consulturus
Alexander to Jupiter Hammon goes to consult
de origine sua.
about origin his (his origin).

210. A *purpose* can now be expressed in Latin *three* different ways,

By rule 160, use *ut* with the *subjunctive*.

By rule 197, use the *supine* in *-um*.

By rule 206, use the *future part.* in *-urus*.

As, Veni *ut* regem salutarem (160).

Veni regem salutatum (197).

Veni regem salutaturus (206).

[*I came to salute the king.*]

Recalled to defend (sup. 197) (his) country. Advised *to-come* (160) a few-days-ago. *About-to-see* the games. *About-to-procure* provisions. Sent to-Rome (151, c). *About-to-hear*. It is *the duty* (175) of a good boy to learn. It is *the property* of a wise (man) to think. He values the book *at a very great* price (190). He has *less* (138) pleasure at-Rome *than* (*quam*) Balbus.

LESSON 20.

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT, AND FUTURE IN *-dus*.

Ablative absolute.

211. The PARTICIPLE of the *present tense*, which in English ends in *-ing*, in Latin ends in *-ans* or *ens*.

212. (a) The first conjugation changes *-āre* of the infinitive into *-ans*; as,

I. *am-āre*, to love; *part. pres. am-ans*, loving.

(b) The second and third conjugations change *-ēre* and *-ere* into *ens*, as,

II. *mon-ēre*, to advise *part. pres. mon-ens*, advising

III. *reg-ere*, to rule *part. pres. reg-ens*, ruling.

(c) The fourth conjugation changes *-īre* into *-iens*, as,

IV. *aud-īre*, to hear *part. pres. aud-iens*, hearing.

Or thus,

I. *am-āre*, to love *am-ans*, loving

II. *mon-ēre*, to advise *mon-ens*, advising

III. *reg-ere*, to rule *reg-ens*, ruling

IV. *aud-īre*, to hear *aud-iens*, hearing.

213. (a) The *present participle* is declined like nouns of the third declension, and makes the genitive in *-tis*, and the abl. in *e*; as,

Nom. *am-ans*, G. *aman-tis*

mon-ens, G. *monen-tis*, &c.

- (b) Like the *past participle*, the *present part.* governs the case of its verb, and admits not of *comparison*; when it has no reference to *time*, it governs the *genitive*; as,

Amans virtutem.
One now loving virtue.

Amans virtutis.
A lover of virtue.

214. (a) The *participle* in *-dus*, called the *futuro* in *-dus*, has a *passive* signification, and is formed by changing *-s* of the *present participle* into *-dus*²²; as,

Part. pres. *Future in -dus.*

i. amans, loving	aman-dus, to be loved
ii. monens, advising	monen-dus, to be advised
iii. regens, ruling	regen-dus, to be ruled
iv. audiens, hearing	audien-dus, to be heard.

[(b) It is used in the *nom.* to express *duty* or *necessity*; likewise after *dare*, *mittere*, and such verbs it expresses *passively* a *purpose*.]

215. The *participle* in *-dus*, like those in *-tus* and *-rus*, are declined like *bonus-a-um*, and agree with their nouns in *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

216. When a noun and a *participle* in agreement

²² In the 3rd and 4th conjugations, with also the deponents, there is another form in *-undus* as well as *-endus*, particularly when *-i* precedes; as, *faciundus*.

This is the usual form of *potior* (*potiundus*).

Some *active* and many *deponent* verbs have a form in *-bundus*, which is of like meaning with the *present participle*; as,

Mori-ens or moribundus
Err-ans or errabundus
Vag-ans or vagabundus

In most other verbs, however, it strengthens their meaning, as,
Gratulabundus, full of congratulation.
Lacrimabundus, full of weeping.—Zumpt.

are independent of any other word in the sentence, they are put in the *ablative case*⁵³.

☞ This is called the *ablative absolute*; and is preceded in English by such words as *when, while, since, after that*; and often with *being* or *having*⁵⁴ before the participle; as,

Imperante Augusto, natus-est Christus: imperante
Reigning Augustus, was born Christ: reigning
Tiberio, crucifixus.
Tiberius, was-crucified.

[*When Augustus was-reigning, Christ was-born:*
When Tiberius was-reigning, (he) was crucified.]

QUESTIONS.

211. What does the present participle end in in English? (In *-ing*.) What, in Latin? (In *-ans* or *-ens*.)—212. How does the first conjugation form its *present participle*? (a) (Changes *-āre* into *-ans*.) How do the second and third conjugations form their *present participle*? (b) (They change *-ere* into *-ens*.) How does the fourth conjugation form its *present participle*? (c) (By changing *-ire* into *-iens*.)—213. How is the pres. part. *declined*? What is its *genitive*?—214. (a) What is the signification of the participle in *-dus*? (Passive.) How is it formed? (By changing *-s* of the pres. part. into *-dus*.) (b) When does it express *duty* or *necessity*? When, *a purpose*?—215. How are participles in *-dus* declined? How do they agree with their nouns?—216. When a *noun* and its *participle* are independent of any other

⁵³ Sometimes a *sentence* supplies the place of a noun or pronoun in the ablative; but in this case "*eo*" may be considered as understood.

⁵⁴ The English of the *passive participle* is "*being*;" of the deponent "*having*;" of the common verb, "*having*," or "*being*."

His dictis.	} passive.
These (things) <i>being</i> said.	
Hæc locutus.	} deponent.
Having spoken these (things).	
His adeptis.	} common.
These (things) <i>being</i> obtained.	
Hæc adeptus.	
Having obtained these (things).	

(See Lesson 28.)

* * * When no *part.* is expressed in Latin, *existentie*, implying *being*, is understood.

word in its sentence, in which case do they stand? (In the *ablative*.) What is this case called? (The *ablative absolute*⁵⁵.) By what words is it generally preceded in English? (By *when*, *while*, *since*, *after that*.)

EXERCISE 21.

217. Imperium, G. -i, command.

Consul, G. -lis, a consul

Decemviri, G. -rorum, *pl.* the decemvirs.

Plebs, G. plebis, *c.* the people.

Potestas, G. potestatis, *f.* power.

Arma, G. armorum, *pl.* arms.

Transferre, (trans-tuli, *perf.*; translatum, *sup.*) irreg. to transfer.

Conced-ere, (-ssi, -cessum,) to grant⁵⁶.

Ced-ere, (-ssi, -cessum,) to yield up.

Pet-ere, (pet-iri and pet-ii⁵⁷;) pet-illum, to request.

Ab, ab, abs, prep. from, by (governing the *ablative*; *a* before consonants—*ab* before vowels—*abs* before *t* and *qu*).

Phrase. Natus viginti annos, *twenty years old*. (*Old* applied to years of life is expressed by *natus* agreeing with the noun, and the *time* following in the *acc.*)

Imperio a consulibus ad decemviros translato, venit Romanus. Concessi plebi potestate cives arma cessurunt: potentibus militibus annos viginti natus venit ad Italiam. Armis amissis rex fugit. Liber scribendus et legendus. Amandus. Multa sunt videnda.

218. Example.

Pythagoras, *when Tarquin was reigning*, into Italy
Pythagoras, Tarquinio regnante, in Italiam
came.
venit.

⁵⁵ The most common use of the *ablative absolute* is for expressing *time*.—Zumpt.

⁵⁶ *Cedere* and *concedere* are of similar import, but *concedere* is the stronger term.

⁵⁷ In the 4th conj. -iri is often contracted before *s*; as, *audisti*, *audissem*, for *audivisti*, *audivissem*;—the *v* is sometimes also dropped; as, *audi*, *audieram*. But this is *not common*: *Petere* prefers *petii*.

*The command being transferred from the decemvirs to the consuls, he-came to*⁵⁸ *Italy (151, c). The king requesting, the citizens yielded-up their arms. The power being granted to the soldiers, he at thirty years old fled into Africa. When Augustus was reigning, Christ was (est) born. When Tiberius was reigning, Christ was crucified. A book to-be-read (215). Many (things) to-be-written. A king to-be-seen. What news? (137.) He values (it) at-very-little (190).*

LESSON 21.

PARTICIPLE IN *-dus*.

219. The participle in *-dus* in agreement with nouns expresses the *continued passive state* of the noun⁵⁹; and so forms a kind of declension; thus, with *pax*, peace, *fem.*

SINGULAR.

NOM. *Pax petenda, a peace to-be-sought.*

GEN. *Pacis petendæ, of seeking a peace.*

DAT. *Paci petendæ, to or for seeking a peace.*

ABL. *Pace petendâ, in, with, from, by, seeking a peace.*

ACC. *Pacem petendam, a peace to be sought (or with ad, to seek a peace, or for seeking a peace).*

220. So in the *plural* with *libri*, books, *masc. &c.*

NOM. *Libri legendi, books to be read.*

GEN. *Librorum legendorum, of reading books.*

DAT. } *Libris legendis, { to, for, or in, with, from,*

ABL. } *by, reading books.*

ACC. *Libros legendos, books to be read (or with ad, to read books⁶⁰, or for reading books).*

⁵⁸ "*to*" after a verb of motion denotes the acc. See (151).

⁵⁹ The sense of *futurity* may sometimes be implied, but it is derived from the *connexion*, not from the participle itself.—Zumpt.

⁶⁰ This construction is peculiar to the participle in *-dus* of those verbs which govern the *accusative* case.

221. (a) The participle in *-dus* always implies *duty* or *necessity* when declined with the verb *sum*, and *then only*; therefore, to express *duty* or *necessity*, use this participle in *-dus*.

(b) The verb *sum* is in this construction rendered into English by "*is to be*"⁶¹, with the *noun* as *nom.*: or by "*must*," or "*ought to*," with the following *dative*"⁶² as *nom.*; thus,

Lat. Diligentia nobis est colenda.

Eng. Diligence by us is to-be-cultivated.

or, We must cultivate diligence.

[Nobis est colenda diligentia.]

222. The participle in *-dus* expresses *necessity* with *sum*, either in *agreement* with the subject; or in the *neuter gender*, with the subject in the *dative*, retaining the government of the verb.

A kind of circumlocution, or *periphrastic* conjugation may be thus formed:

Legendum est mihi, *I must read.*

Legendum est tibi, *you must read.*

Legendum est illi, *he or she must read.*

Legendum est nobis, *we must read.*

Legendum est vobis, *you must read.*

Legendum est illis, *they must read.*

Or, according to the Latin,—*it is to be* read by me,—*it is to be* read by you,—*it is to be* read by him, &c.; and so with the other tenses⁶³ of *sum*.

⁶¹ Though the English expression "*is to be*" denotes either *futurity* or *obligation*, the participle in *-dus* with the verb *sum* always expresses *necessity* or *duty*.—Crombie.

⁶² This *dative* may be a *noun* or *pronoun*.

⁶³ Or it may be conjugated in agreement with the *nom.* as the future in *-rus* in page 74 (note ⁶¹); thus,

Amandus (-*a-nm*) *sum*, I must or deserve to be loved.

Amandus es, &c. thou must be loved, &c.

Amandus eram, &c. &c.

Amandus ful, &c. &c.

223. (a) If the expression is universal, implying *all*, *every body*, the pronoun may be omitted ;
as,

Lat. Legendum est, *it is to be* read.
That is, *We* must read,
you must read,
every body must read.

- (b) Likewise, when the *dative* may be understood from the context, it may be omitted.

QUESTIONS.

219. What does the participle in *-dus* in *agreement* with nouns express? Go through a declension of the participle in *-dus* in agreement with nouns in the singular, with *pax* (*fem.*)—220. And in the plural with *libri* (*masc.*)—221. (a) When does the participle in *-dus* imply *duty* or *necessity*? How do you render *sum* into English with the noun as *nom.*? (b) How, when the *dative* is to be taken as *nom.*?—222. How does the participle in *-dus* express *necessity* with *sum* in relation to the subject? Go through a *periphrastic* conjugation in the present tense with this participle. Why is *legendum* in the neuter? (To agree with *it* or *the thing* understood.)—223. When is the pronoun omitted? (a) When may the *dative* be omitted? (b) (When the persons intended may be understood from the context.)

EXERCISE 22.

224. Munus, G. *muneris*, *n.* office, duty, gift.
Difficultas, G. *difficultatis*, *f.* difficulty.
Plato, G. *Platōnis*, *m.* Plato (a Greek philosopher).
Studiosus-*a-um*, adj. very fond.
Ignarus-*a-um*, adj. ignorant.
Oratio, G. *-onis*, *f.* language, speech.
Materies, G. *-iei*, *f.* material.
Turris, G. *-is*, *m.* a tower.
Permulti-*-a*, adj. pl. very many.
Negligens, G. *-ntis*, adj. negligent.
Sustin-*-ere*, to support.
Cern-*-ere*, (*crevi*, *cretum*,) to perceive.
Fac-*-ere*, (pres. part. *faciens*; perf. *feci*, sup. *factum*,) to compose, make.

Pol-īre, to polish.
 Veh-ēre, (vexi, vectum,) to carry.
 Adhib-ēre, to show, exhibit.
 Elig-ēre, to choose.

(On paragraphs 219, 220.)

*Sustinendi muneris difficultatem cernit. Platonis audiendi studiosus est. Puer ignarus est faciendæ ac poliendæ orationis. Materies navibus et turribus faciendis (dat.) vehebatur. Permulti in equis parandis magnam adhibent curam, in amicis eligendis negligentes sunt. Cæsare duce (216. Note 54 **) vice-runt milites.*

225. Example.

Romulum et Remum *urbis condendæ* cupīdo
 Romulus and Remus *of a city building* the desire
 cepit.
 seized.

[*The desire of building a city seized Romulus and Remus.*]

He-showed the greatest care in (*in*) *supporting* (his) *office*. The boy was very-fond of *reading Cicero*⁶⁴ (gen.). He brought the material *for making the ships and towers* from (*ab*) Italy⁶⁵. The king perceived the difficulty of *procuring horses*. He is very-fond of *composing* and *polishing* (his) language (gen.). Very-many show great negligence *in choosing* (their) *friends*. He is very fond of *reading Plato* and *hearing Cicero*.

LESSON 22.

NECESSITY OR DUTY (*continued*).

226. The *necessity* or *duty* may refer to *present* time, *past*, or *future*; this is effected by the tenses of *sum*; as

⁶⁴ Cicero, G. Ciceronis.

⁶⁵ Italia, G. Italiæ.

Present. Dimicandum est, it is to be fought.

Past. Dimicandum erat or fuit, it was or had to be fought.

Future. Dimicandum erit, it shall or will have to be fought.

EXERCISE 23.

227. Lex, G legis, a law.

Respublica, G. rei-publicæ, f. the state.

(Nouns compounded of two nominatives are both declined; as res, a thing, and publica, public.)

Suspicio, G. -onis, f. suspicion.

Dignus-a-um, adj. worthy.

Studium, G. -i, study.

Juvenis, is, youth.

Jub-ēre, (jussi, jussum,) to order.

Suscip-ere, (pres. part. suscipiens, prf. suscepi, sup. -ptum,) to undertake.

Vit-āre, to avoid.

Dimic-āre, to fight.

Proferre, (protuli, prolatum, proferendus,) to extend.

(On paragraphs 221—223.)

DUTY AND NECESSITY.

[How is the difference of time expressed by the participle in -dus? (226)]

Lex jubet ea quæ facienda sunt. Respublica tibi est regenda. Suscipiendum est omnibus. Vitanda nobis est suspicio. Dignum nobis dicendum est. Legendum est illis. Audiendum est vobis. Quibuscum⁶⁶ mihi dimicandum erat. Studia juvenis (gen.) proferenda sunt. Cum rege nobis dimicandum erit. Pax mihi petenda est. Veni Romam paucis his diebus (208).

⁶⁶ The preposition cum, with, joined with the monosyllables me, te, se, and with nobis, vobis, and quibus, is annexed to them as one word; mecum, tecum, &c.

228. Example.

Deum esse, nobis fatendum-est.
A God *that* there is, by us it is to be confessed.

[*We must confess that there is a God.*]

Suspicion *was to be avoided* (223). *You must fight with the king. We shall have to rule the state. All must undertake (it). With whom must I read? We ought to extend the studies of youth. They must write. You (pl.) must seek peace. All must hear: we must read. I came to see the king (express it three ways, 210). When Augustus was reigning, Christ was-born (216). They reckon virtue at-nothing (190).*

LESSON 23.

GERUNDS.

229. The *gerunds* express the action or state of the verb like a verbal substantivē, and they may be considered as merely the *gen.*, *dat.*, *abl.*, and *acc.* cases neuter of the participle in *-dus*.

230. The *gerund* and the *participle in -dus* may be considered as convertible one into the other whenever the verb is transitive (that is, takes the *accusative*); thus

Lat. Sum cupidus scribendi epistolam, } *gerund*
Eng. I am desirous of writing a letter, }

(here *scribendi* is a *gerund*, and governs the *accusative* epistolam); this, therefore, may be converted into the *participle in -dus* by making them agree in *gender* and *number*, and keeping to the case of the *gerund*; thus

Sum cupidus scribendæ epistolæ, } *particip.*
I am desirous of writing a letter, } in *-dus*.

(Or, of a letter to be written.)

231. The *gerunds* with the aid of the infinitive *present* can be exhibited as a declinable noun of the *singular* number; thus

Nom.	}	Scribere, <i>to write</i> .
Acc.		
Gen.		Scribendi, <i>of writing</i> .
Dat.	}	Scribendo, <i>to or for writing</i> ;— <i>in, with,</i>
Abl.		
Acc.		Scribendum, <i>to write</i> . (the <i>acc.</i> gerund is always dependent on some preposition; usually <i>ad</i> , <i>to</i> , or <i>inter</i> , <i>during</i> , <i>amidst</i> .)

232. The gerunds are *threes*, and end in

-di -do -dum;

and govern the cases of their verbs. (See paragraph 231.)

233. The gerund in *-di* is sometimes employed to express a *purpose* after *gratiā* or *causā*, (for the sake of,) as

Veni regem salutandi gratiā (or causā).

I came for the sake of saluting the king:

this may be converted into the participle in *-dus* in agreement with the noun governed by *ad*; as

Veni ad regem salutandum.

*I came to salute the king*⁶⁷.

QUESTIONS.

229. What do the gerunds express? What may the gerunds be considered? (As the *gen.*, *dat.*, or *abl.*, and *acc.* cases of the

⁶⁷ By these rules, in addition to 160, 197 and 206, a purpose can be expressed correctly *five* different ways; thus

Veni ut regem salutarem. (160)

Veni regem salutatum. (197)

Veni regem salutaturus. (206)

Veni regem salutandi causā (or gratiā.) } (233)

Veni ad regem salutandum.

[*I came to salute the king.*]

participle in *-dus*.)—230. When may the *gerund* be converted into the participle in *-dus*? (Whenever the verb forming the gerund governs an *acc.* case.) What is the difference of construction in the gerund and the participle in *-dus*? (The gerund *governs* its noun, the participle in *-dus agrees* with its noun.)—231. Decline the gerund as a noun with the aid of the *present* infinitive. What case does the present infin. supply? (The *nom.*; sometimes the *acc.*) What is the *acc.* gerund, or gerund in *-dum*, always dependent upon? (Some preposition, generally *ad* or *inter*.) What does *ad* signify? (*To*.) and *inter*? (*During* or *amidst*.)—232. How many gerunds are there? (*Three*.) What do they end in?—233. How does the gerund in *-di* express a purpose?

EXERCISE 24.

234. *Alius*—*alius*, one man—another.

Charta, *G. -æ, f.* paper.

Utilis, *utile*, *adj.* useful.

Idoneus-a-um, *adj.* fit.

Promptus-a-um, *adj.* ready.

Ignarus-a-um, *adj.* idle.

Leg-ere, to read.

Ed-ere, *irr.* to eat.

Al-ere, (*alui*, *alitum* and *altum*,) to nourish.

Ag-ere, (*egi*, *actum*,) to act, do.

Cogit-are, to think.

Male, *adv.* badly.

Platonem audiendi studiosus est. Milites in equos parando magnam adhibent curam. Studiosus est legendi alius, alius scribendi. Charta utilis est scribendo. Illud idoneum erat edendo. Pueri ad audierunt prompti: ignavi sunt inter docendum. Homo natus est ad intelligendum et agendum. Nihil agendo homines malè agere discunt. Hominis mens discendo alitur et cogitando.

235. Example.

Avari homines non solum libidine
. Covetous men not only with the passion

augendi cruciantur, sed etiam *amittendi*
of acquiring are tormented, but also of losing
metu
with the fear.

[Covetous men are not only tormented with the passion of (for) acquiring, but also with the fear of losing.]

The best soldiers are fit for fighting: one man is very fond of writing; another, of reading. The men are not only ready to hear, but also to act. By doing something, men learn to do well⁶⁸. While playing⁶⁹, the boys are idle. We are ready to understand, and to act. Hear your master while teaching. It is fit for eating. It is a mark of wisdom (175) not to persevere in error. It is your duty (182) to learn well: it is mine to write well.

LESSON 24.

PASSIVE VERBS.

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE TENSES.

236. All PASSIVES⁷⁰ of the *third person* singular or plural for *not-completed actions* are formed by adding *-ur* to the third person *active*; as,—

⁶⁸ Benè.

⁶⁹ Inter ludendum.

⁷⁰ *Passive verbs* are such as express the suffering of the action of the verb: therefore all active verbs followed by an accusative can be made passive, and that *accusative*, and no other word, must be the *nom.* to the passive verb; hence, if a verb does not govern an accusative in the active voice, it can have no passive, but is used *impersonally*; as,

Ille dixit hoc. } *Active*, governing the accusative *hoc*.
He said this. }

Hoc ab illo dictum-est. } *Passive*, *hoc* now being the *nominative* (and
This by him was-said. } the *agent* of the active in the ablative *illo*).

Resisto tibi. } Here *resisto* governs a *dative* (not an accusative), and
I resist you. } therefore cannot be made *passive*. You must not, to express the *suffering* of the action, say, *tu resisteris* (you are resisted), but must make the verb *impersonal*, and say, *tibi resistitur* (you are resisted).

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

I.

Sing. Plur.

Active. -at -ant
Passive. -ātūr -antūr

II.

Sing. Plur.

-et -ent
-ētūr -entūr

III.

Sing. Plur.

-it -unt
-ītūr -untūr

IV.

Sing. Plur.

-it -iunt, advise.
-ītūr -iuntūr, am advised.

IMPERFECT.

Active. -ābat -ābant
Passive. -ābātūr -ābantūr-iēbat -iēbant, did advise.
-iēbātūr -iēbantūr, was advised.

FUTURE.

Active. -abit -abunt
Passive. -abītūr -abuntūr-iet -ient, shall or will advise.
-iētūr -ientūr, shall or will be advised.

POTENTIAL AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

Active. -et -ent
Passive. -ētūr -entūr-iat -iant, may or can advise.
-iātūr -iantūr, may or can be advised.

IMPERFECT.

Active. -ēret -ērent
Passive. -ēretūr -ērentūr-iret -irent, might or could advise.
-iretūr -irentūr, might or could be advised.

237. (a) The agent of an *active* verb is expressed by the *ablative* in *passive* constructions.

(b) This ablative of the agent, if *living beings*, requires the preposition *a* or *ab*:

Domus *a* *civē* spoliabatur.

The house *by a citizen* was plundered.

(c) If the agent is *not a living being*, the preposition is *omitted*; as,

Domus *igne* cremabatur.

The house *by fire* was destroyed.

238. A noun expressing the *instrument* of an action is to be put in the *ablative* without a preposition; as,

Milites regem *gladiis* interfecerunt.

The soldiers the king *with swords* killed.

[*The soldiers killed the king with (their) swords.*]

239. (a) A noun expressing the *manner* of an action is to be put in the *ablative* case, with the preposition *cum* (*with*); as,

Puer *cum diligentia* discit.

The boy *with diligence* learns.

(b) When an adjective is joined with the noun governed by *cum*, *cum* must be placed *between* the adjective and substantive; as,

Puer *maximā cum diligentia* discit.

The boy *greatest with diligence* learns.

[*The boy learns with the greatest diligence.*]

QUESTIONS.

236. How are the third persons singular and plural of all the tenses for *not-completed actions* formed? (By adding *-ur* to the same persons of the active voice.) What are the tenses for *not-completed actions*? (Present, imperfect, and future.) Go through these passive forms in all the conjugations. 237. How is the agent of an active verb expressed in *passive* con-

structions? [(a) by the *ablative*.] If the agent is a *living being*, what does it require? [(b) The preposition *a* or *ab*.] If the agent is *not a living being*, is the preposition to be expressed? [(c) No.]—239. How is the *instrument* of an action expressed? (By an *ablative without a preposition*.)—239. How is the *manner* of an action expressed? [(a) by the *ablative*, with *cum*.] Where is the place for *cum*, when an adjective accompanies the noun? [(b) Usually *between* the adjective and the noun.]

EXERCISE 25.

240. Ignis, G. ignis, fire.
 Hyems, G. -mis, winter.
 Gladius, G. -dii, a sword.
 Corpus, G. cōrpŭs-is, n. a body.
 Divitiæ, G. -iārū, pl. riches.
 Usus, G. -usūs, m. use.
 Vita, G. vitæ, f. life.
 Amicitia, G. amicitia, friendship.
 Tertius-a-um, adj. third.
 Lev-āre, to lighten, lessen.
 Vulner-āre, to wound.
 Sepel-īre, to bury.
 Expet-ēre, to seek for.
 Exceptus-a-um, excepted.

Summus mons, the top of the mountain.

241. Many adjectives are used in *agreement* with nouns to express the relation of its parts, and where the English employ *two* nouns; thus, in *summus mons*, *summus* (highest) is the adjective in agreement with *mons*, answering to the English "*the top of*:" so *imus mons*, means *the bottom of the mountain* (the lowest mountain), *medius mons*, the middle of the mountain⁷¹, &c.

⁷¹ These adjectives are,

Primus (<i>first</i>), beginning of,	medius (<i>middle</i>), middle of,	ultimus (<i>last</i>), end of,	summus (<i>highest</i>), top of,
imus (<i>lowest</i>), bottom of,	interior (<i>more inward</i>), interior of,	intimus (<i>most inward</i>), inside of,	
extremus (<i>last</i>), end of,	reliquus (<i>remaining</i>), rest of,	universus (<i>entire</i>), whole of,	

*Ignē levatur hyems. Philosophia laudabitur a bonis. Tertiā horā magister equitum gladio vulnerabatur. Corpora civium a militibus in summo monte sepelientur. Domus ædificatur*⁷². Nuncius mitteretur Romam. Divitiæ ad usus vitæ necessarios expetuntur. Diligentia ab omnibus laudatur. Nihil amicitia præstabilius est, excepta virtute. *Est sapientis diligentiam laudare. Venit, ut puerum videret.*

242. Example.

Omnes artes in veri investigatione
All arts in of truth the investigation
versantur.
are employed.

[*All arts are employed in the investigation of truth.*]

The king will be buried at Rome (151, a) by the soldiers (239, b). The queen's messenger *was wounded*

⁷² *Domus ædificatur, the house is building*: the English participle in *-ing* belongs to the *passive* as well as to the *active* voice, and requires a little attention in young scholars to know when to employ the *passive* or the *active* in turning into Latin. In the sentence *the house is building*, "is building" is *passive*; but in the sentence, *Caius is building*, "is building" is *active*: therefore in making Latin, enquire if the *nominative is acting*; if so, use the *active verb*; if the *nom. is suffering* the action, use the *passive verb*: as these *two sentences* exemplify;

Passive. { *The house is building.*
Domus ædificatur.

Active. { *Caius is building.*
Caius ædificat.

Again it may be observed, that when in *passive constructions* the English participle in *-ing* is employed to express an *incomplete state* of suffering, the Latins use a *passive tense* formed by *inflection*; but when the suffering is *completed*, and an English *past participle* is used, a *past participle* or *compound tense* is used in Latin; thus,

<i>Passive with -ing.</i>	
<i>The house is building.</i>	Domus ædificatur.
<i>The house was building.</i>	Domus ædificabatur.
<i>Passive with past part.</i>	
<i>The house is built.</i>	Domus est ædificata.
<i>The house was built.</i>	Domus erat ædificata.

by a sword. Diligence and philosophy *are praised*⁷³ by all. The winter *will-be-lightened* by fire. Soldiers should-be-sent to Rome (151, c) from Corinth to-see (160) the games. We *ought* to praise virtue (221, a). When the messenger *was* heard (216), the queen *was-praised* by the citizens of Corinth. The boys are very-fond of *reading books* (219). He values (it) at a great price (190).

LESSON 25.

PASSIVE VERBS (*continued*).

PRESENT, IMPERFECT, AND FUTURE TENSES.

First and second persons.

243. The *first persons* singular and plural of the *present imperfect* and *first future* tenses passive of all verbs are formed by *adding* to the vowel-endings active in -o the letter -r; and by *changing* the consonant ending (m or s) into -r, as,

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		<i>Present.</i>	
1st Persons.		1st Persons.	
<i>Active.</i>	amō	} <i>Singular.</i>	{ amem
<i>Passive.</i>	amör		{ amēr
<i>Active.</i>	amāmūs	} <i>Plural.</i>	{ amēmūs
<i>Passive.</i>	amāmūr		{ amēmūr.
		<i>Imperfect.</i>	
<i>Active.</i>	amābam	} <i>Singular.</i>	{ amārem
<i>Passive.</i>	amābūr		{ amārör ⁷⁴
<i>Active.</i>	amābāmūs	} <i>Plural.</i>	{ amārēmūs
<i>Passive.</i>	amābāmūr		{ amārēmūr.

⁷³ Two or more nouns coupled by "and" require a verb plural.

⁷⁴ This person may be considered also as formed from the infinitive active by adding r; as amare, amarer.

Future.

1st & 2nd conj. in -bo.		3d & 4th conj. in -am.	
<i>Active.</i> amābō	}	<i>Singular.</i> {	regam
<i>Passive.</i> amābūr			regar
<i>Active.</i> amābīmūs	}	<i>Plural.</i> {	regēmūs
<i>Passive.</i> amābīmūr			regēmūr.

244. The *second persons*, singular and plural, of the *present*, *imperfect*, and first *future tenses* passive of all verbs are formed by changing -s of the second persons singular active into -ris and -re for the singular; and the -tis of the second person plural active into -mini and -minor for the passive; as,

INDICATIVE.			SUBJUNCTIVE.	
		<i>Present.</i>		
2nd Persons.			2nd Persons.	
<i>Active.</i>	amās	} <i>Singular.</i>	{	amēs
<i>Passive.</i>	amā-rīs or amā-rē			amē-rīs or amē-rē
<i>Active.</i>	amā-tīs	} <i>Plural.</i>	{	amē-tīs
<i>Passive.</i>	amā-mīnī amā-mīnōr			amē-mīnī amē-mīnōr.
<i>Imperfect.</i>				
<i>Active.</i>	amābās	} <i>Singular.</i>	{	amārēs
<i>Passive.</i>	amābū-rīs or amābū-rē			amārē-rīs or amārē-rē.
<i>Active.</i>	amābā-tīs	} <i>Plural.</i>	{	amārē-tīs
<i>Passive.</i>	amābā-mīnī amābā-mīnōr			amārē-mīnī amārē-mīnōr.
<i>Future.</i>				
1st & 2nd conj. in -bo.			3d & 4th conj. in -am.	
<i>Active.</i>	amāb-īs	} <i>Singular.</i>	{	reg-ēs
<i>Passive.</i>	amāb-ērīs amāb-ērē			regē-rīs or regē-rē

<i>Active.</i> amābī- <i>tīs</i>	} <i>Plural.</i> {	<i>regō-tīs</i>
<i>Passive.</i> amābī- <i>mīnī</i>		<i>regō-mīnī</i> or
amābī- <i>mīnōr</i>		<i>regō-mīnōr.</i>

☞ In the first and second *conjugations* the futures in *-bo* in the second *persons* singular change the *-i* into *ē*; as, *active*, amab-*is*; *passive*, amab-*ē-ris* or amab-*ē-ro*⁷³.

QUESTIONS.

243. How are the first persons passive *singular* and *plural*, of all verbs in the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future* tenses formed? (Those first persons ending in *-o* add *-r*; those in *-m* or *-s* change

⁷³ These tenses declined throughout are,

PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Indicative</i> (am)		<i>Potential or Subjunctive</i> (may or can be)	
<i>Singular.</i>	Amōr — ā- <i>rīs</i> or } — ā- <i>rē</i> — āt- <i>ūr</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	Amēr — ē- <i>rīs</i> or } — ē- <i>rē</i> — ēt- <i>ūr</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	— īmūr — ā- <i>mīnī</i> or } — ā- <i>mīnōr</i> } — ant- <i>ūr</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	— ē-mūr — ē- <i>mīnī</i> or } — ē- <i>mīnōr</i> } — ent- <i>ūr.</i>

IMPERFECT TENSE.

(was)		(would, could, should be)	
<i>Singular.</i>	Amābūr — ā- <i>rīs</i> or } — ā- <i>rē</i> — āt- <i>ūr</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	Amārēr — ē- <i>rīs</i> or } — ē- <i>rē</i> — ēt- <i>ūr</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	— īmūr — ā- <i>mīnī</i> or } — ā- <i>mīnōr</i> } — ant- <i>ūr</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	— ē-mūr — ē- <i>mīnī</i> or } — ē- <i>mīnōr</i> } — ent- <i>ūr.</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

1st & 2nd conj. (shall or will be)		3rd & 4th conj. (shall or will be)	
<i>Singular.</i>	Amābūr — ābē- <i>rīs</i> or } — ābē- <i>rē</i> — ābīt- <i>ūr</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	Regūr — ē- <i>rīs</i> or } — ē- <i>rē</i> — ēt- <i>ūr</i>
<i>Plural.</i>	— ābīmūr — ābī- <i>mīnī</i> or } — ābī- <i>mīnōr</i> } — ābunt- <i>ūr</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	— ē-mūr — ē- <i>mīnī</i> or } — ē- <i>mīnōr</i> } — ent- <i>ūr.</i>

-m or -s into -r.) Give the changes in each tense.—244. How are the second persons in the *singular* for these tenses formed? (By changing the active second person singular endings in -s into -ris or -re.) How are the second persons *plural* formed? (By changing the active second person plural endings in -tis into -mini and -minor.) Give the changes for the second persons in each tense.

EXERCISE 26.

245. Juventus, G. -tūtis, youth (time of youth).

Vis, G. vis ⁷⁶, *sing.* force, violence.

Vires, G. virium, *pl.* strength.

Vir, G. viri ⁷⁷, a man.

Velocitas, G. -tatis, *f.* swiftness.

Celeritas, G. -tatis, *f.* activity.

Consilium, G. -lii, counsel, design.

Sententia, G. -æ, prudence.

Legātus, G. -i, an ambassador.

Spern-ēre, (*sprevi*,) to despise.

Ger-ēre, (*gessi, gestum*,) to carry on.

Delect-āre, to delight.

Excus-āre, to excuse.

Expell-ēre, (*expuli-ulsum*,) to drive out, expel.

Jub-ēre, (*jussi*,) to order.

Sine, *prep.* without (requires the *abl.*).

A viris ea geruntur in juventute et viribus. Spernebar a rege. Non viribus, aut velocitate, aut celeritate corporum res magnæ gerebantur, sed consilio ⁷⁶, auctoritate, sententiâ. Sapientibus et bonis delectamini. Nos a pueris docebimur, docebimini vos a puellis. A te epistola scriberetur. Non magnâ sine causâ excusabaris. Ab omnibus bonis a patriâ expellemini. A Cæsare jubeor ⁷⁹ legatos mittere Romam. A Corintho expellebar. Rex consilium duxit nihili.

⁷⁶ The singular *vis* denotes *force, violence*, and is not so often used; *vires* is preferable.

⁷⁷ Mark the difference between the plurals *vires* and *viri*.

⁷⁸ When *three or more* nouns are joined together, it is usual either to omit the conjunction *et* entirely, or to repeat it to all; with but *two* nouns, it is seldom omitted.

⁷⁹ A purpose after verbs of *commanding* requires *ut* with the *subjunctive*, except *jubeo*, which takes the *acc.* and *infinitive*.

246. Example.

Astu dolo specie deci-
By craftiness. by trick ²⁰ *and by appearance we were*
piebāmur incauti ²¹.
deceived unawares.

[We unawares were deceived by craftiness, by trick, and by the appearance.]

We *shall-be-buried* in the city. I *was-admired* by many ²² wise (men). (237, b.) You *were-expelled* from Corinth by the magistrates. Ye *are-excused*. I *am-ordered* to kill the slave *with a sword*. I *shall-be-delighted* to come to Rome. We *should-be-delighted* to see the city. Great things (*res*) *are-carried-on* by counsel and authority, not by strength (*pl.*) and swiftness of body (*pl.*). You *will-be-expelled* from (your) country by all good (men). We *may-be-taught* by prudence. You *are-despised* by all wise (men). He values the gift *at-a-great-price* (189, a). It is *your duty* (183) to learn, *mine* to teach (52).

LESSON 26.

PASSIVE (*continued*).*Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses.*

247. The *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* tenses in the passive voice are compound tenses; that is, compounded of *two* verbs.

248. These tenses are formed of the *perfect participle* (in *-tus* or *-sus*, 202) in agreement with the nom. and the tenses of the verb *sum*.

²⁰ See note 78, p. 96.

²¹ Many adjectives in Latin can only be translated into the English idiom by the employment of adverbs; as *incautus*, adj. *incautiously*, adv.; *involuntus*, adj. *unwillingly*, adv.

²² *Multus* et. See note 29.

249. The *perfect* tenses are formed of the *perfect participle*, and for the

<i>Indicative,</i> <i>Sum</i> or <i>fui</i> (declined throughout).	<i>Potential</i> or <i>Subj.</i> <i>Sim</i> or <i>fucri'm</i> (declined throughout).
--	--

250. The *pluperfect* tenses are formed of the *perfect participle*; and for the

<i>Indicative,</i> <i>Eram</i> or <i>fuera'm</i> (declined throughout).	<i>Potential</i> or <i>Subj.</i> <i>Essem</i> or <i>fuissem</i> (declined throughout).
---	--

251. The *future perfect* is formed of the *perfect participle* with the two *futures* of *sum*.

Ero or *fuero*⁵³ (declined throughout).

⚡ The *participle* is declined like *bonus-a-um*, and agrees with the *nom.* in *gender*, *case*, and *number*.

53 PERFECT TENSES.

INDICATIVE. <i>Sing.</i> (Have been.)				POTENT. or SUBJ. <i>Sing.</i> (Should have been.)			
<i>Ama-tus</i>	<i>sum</i>	or	<i>fui</i>	<i>Ama-tus</i>	<i>sim</i>	or	<i>fucri'm</i>
-tus	<i>es</i>	or	<i>fui'sti</i>	-tus	<i>sis</i>	or	<i>fucri's</i>
-tus	<i>est</i>	or	<i>fuit</i>	-tus	<i>sit</i>	or	<i>fucri't</i>
<i>Plur. -ti</i>	<i>sumus</i>	or	<i>fuimus</i>	<i>Plur. -ti</i>	<i>simus</i>	or	<i>fucri'mus</i>
-ti	<i>estis</i>	or	<i>fui'stis</i>	-ti	<i>sitis</i>	or	<i>fucri'tis</i>
-ti	<i>sunt</i>	or	<i>fu'erunt, fu'ere</i>	-ti	<i>sint</i>	or	<i>fucri'nt.</i>

PLUPERFECT TENSES.

<i>Sing.</i> (Had been.)				<i>Sing.</i> (Would have been.)			
<i>Ama-tus</i>	<i>eram</i>	or	<i>fuera'm</i>	<i>Ama-tus</i>	<i>essem</i>	or	<i>fuissem</i>
-tus	<i>eras</i>	or	<i>fuera's</i>	-tus	<i>esses</i>	or	<i>fuisse's</i>
-tus	<i>erat</i>	or	<i>fuera't</i>	-tus	<i>esset</i>	or	<i>fuisse't</i>
<i>Plur. -ti</i>	<i>eramus</i>	or	<i>fuera'mus</i>	<i>Plur. -ti</i>	<i>essemus</i>	or	<i>fuissemus</i>
-ti	<i>eratis</i>	or	<i>fuera'tis</i>	-ti	<i>essetis</i>	or	<i>fuisse'tis</i>
-ti	<i>erant</i>	or	<i>fuera'nt</i>	-ti	<i>essent</i>	or	<i>fuisse'nt.</i>

FUTURE PERFECT TENSE.

(Shall have been.)

<i>Singular.</i>				<i>Plural.</i>			
<i>Ama-tus</i>	<i>ero</i>	or	<i>fuero</i>	<i>Ama-ti</i>	<i>erimus</i>	or	<i>fu'erimus</i>
-tus	<i>eris</i>	or	<i>fu'eris</i>	-ti	<i>eritis</i>	or	<i>fu'eritis</i>
-tus	<i>erit</i>	or	<i>fu'erit</i>	-ti	<i>erunt</i>	or	<i>fu'erint.</i>

QUESTIONS.

247. What are the *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* tenses of the passive voice?—248. How are they formed? (Of the *past participle* and tenses of *sum*.)—249. How is the *perfect* tense formed for the indicative? How, for the *subjunctive* or *potential*?—250. How is the *pluperfect* tense for the *indicative* formed? How, for the *subjunctive* or *potential*?—251. How is the *future perfect* formed? How is the participle *declined*? (Like *bonus-a-um*.) How does it agree? (With the *nom.* in *gender*, *case*, and *number*.)

EXERCISE 27.

252. *Cæsus-a-um*, part. of *cædere*, to kill.
Samnis, G. *Samnītis*, a Samnite; a people near Rome.
Lachryma, G. *-æ*, a tear.
Pauci-a-a, adj. *pl.* few.
Vulnus, G. *-nēris*, (*n.*) a wound.
Cassivellaunus, G. *-ni*, a ruler of Ancient Britain opposed to *Cæsar*.
Liber-āre, to set free.
Vinc-ĕre, (*vici*, *victum*,) to conquer.
Fund-ĕre, (*fudi*, *fusum*,) to pour out, shed.
Accip-ĕre, (*-cūpi*, *-ceptum*,) to receive.
Interfic-ĕre, (*-fēci*, *-fectum*,) to kill.
Super-āre, to overcome.
E or *ex*, *prep.* of or out of (followed by an *abl.*: *ex* before vowels).
Rectē, *adv.* properly.
Postea, *adv.* afterwards.
Crudeliter, *adv.* cruelly.
Etiā, *conj.* even, also.

. Without a good *copia verborum*, it is impossible for a pupil to make very rapid progress in his acquirement of the Latin language; but, to aid him in storing words in his memory, the Author has written an *Analytical Latin Vocabulary*, having the English words derived from the Latin in close juxtaposition: this should be put into the pupil's hands contemporaneously with this work, and it will be found highly beneficial. The book is published by Messrs. Whittaker and Co.

Cæsis hostibus (216) *liberatus-est* exercitus: postea Samnites *victi-sunt*. Cæsar etiam lachrymas fuisse dicitur. *Eram* epistolâ tuâ *delectatus*⁸⁴. Res magnæ consilio *gestæ sint*. A magistro rectè *docti-essimus*. Milites, paucis vulneribus acceptis, ex sylvis *expulsi-sint*. Latini pugnâ *superati-sunt*. Pater ejus a Cassivellauno crudeliter *interfectus-erat*. *Quanti* (189, a) hoc emisti? *Nimio** emit.

253. Example.

Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi-
On-the-same day ambassadors from the enemy were-
sunt ad Cæsarem.
sent to Cæsar.

§ In which case is the *price* or *value* of a thing put? (189)

When the soldiers *were-slain* (216), ambassadors were sent to-Cæsar. I *shall-be-taught* properly by the master *on-the-same day* (150. 253). You *were* afterwards⁸⁵ *delighted* with my letter (67). The wild-beasts *were-driven-out* of-the-woods by the citizens. The Samnites *were* cruelly *killed* by the Romans. I *have-been-set-free* by a better (174) (man) than (omit, 110, a) his father. The king, also, *is-said* to-have-shed tears. Many good (things) *have-been-received* by you. We came to Rome, *on-the-same day*, to-see (160) the games. It is *the duty* of a Christian (175) *to help the poor*⁸⁶. He values money (at) *too-much** (190). The former (148, b) *was-loved*, the latter *was-despised*.

⁸⁴ The *participle* is often separated from its *verb*.

⁸⁵ In English, adverbs in passive constructions stand *between* the auxiliary verb and the participle.

⁸⁶ *Subvenire* (with a *dat.*) *pauperibus*.

* The adjectives of *price* and *value* (in 190) are sometimes found in the *ablative*, agreeing with *pretio* (price) understood.

475
P65F

LESSON 27.

PASSIVE (*continued*).

IMPERATIVE AND INFINITIVE MOODS.

251. The *passive imperative*, like the active, has *two* forms for each second person of each number; the *first* form of the *singular* is merely the infinitive active: as, *amāre*; the second form changes *-re* into *-tor*; as,

	I. conj.	II. conj.	III. conj.	IV. conj.
Imperative,	{ <i>amārē</i> <i>amā-tōr</i>	{ <i>monērē</i> <i>monē-tōr</i>	{ <i>regērē</i> <i>regī-tōr</i>	{ <i>audirē</i> <i>audi-tōr</i> .

[The short *ē* of the third conj. becomes *ī*.]

255. The *second person plural* is the same as the second person plural of the passive *present indicative*.

256. The other persons are borrowed from the present subjunctive²⁷.

[The third persons, however, have a second form, which is the same as that of the active imperative with *r* appended; as,

Active, *amāto*, *sing.* *amanto*, *plur.*

Passive, *amātōr*, *sing.* *amantōr*, *plur.*]

²⁷ The *imperative* is,

	I. CONJ.	II. CONJ.	III. CONJ.	IV. CONJ.
<i>Singular.</i>				
2nd } <i>person.</i>	<i>am-āre</i> — ātor	<i>mon-ēre</i> — ētor	<i>reg-ēre</i> — ītor	<i>aud-īre</i> — ītor
3rd } <i>person.</i>	(— ētur <i>subj.</i>) — ātor	(— ēatur) — ētor	(— ātur) — ītor	(— iatur) — ītor
<i>Plural.</i>				
2nd } <i>person.</i>	— āminī — āminōr	— ēminī — ēminōr	— īminī — īminōr	— īminī — īminōr
3rd } <i>person.</i>	(— entūr <i>subj.</i>) — antōr	(— eantūr) — entōr	(— antūr) — untōr	(— iantūr) — iuntōr.

257. There are two important tenses in the *passive infinitive*, as in the active; viz., the *present* and the *perfect*⁸⁸.

- (a) The passive INFINITIVE *present* is formed from the active by changing *-e* into *-i* for the first, second, and fourth conjugations; as,

PRESENT INFINITIVES.

	I.	II.	IV.
<i>Active</i> ,	amārē	monērē	audīrē
<i>Passive</i> ,	amārī	monērī	audīrī.

- (b) The third conjugation forms the *present infinitive* passive by changing the whole ending *-ēre* of the active infinitive into *-i*; as,

PRESENT INFINITIVE.

III. conj.

Active, reg-ērē
Passive, reg-ī⁸⁹.

258. The *perfect* and *pluperfect* tenses of the *infinitive* passive are formed of the past participle (in the *accusative* case) with *esse* and *fuisse* (of *sum*).

I. conj.	II. conj.	III. conj.	IV. conj.
amātum	monitum	rectum	auditum
esse or fuisse.	esse or fuisse.	esse or fuisse.	esse or fuisse.

259. There is a *future* in the infinitive passive, which is made of the supine in *-um* and the word *iri*,

⁸⁸ The *present* infinitive expresses a state of suffering *still continuing*; the *perfect* infinitive expresses the same state *completed*.

⁸⁹ In older Latin the *passive infinitives* will be found lengthened by the addition of the syllable *-er*; as,

I.	II.	III.	IV.
amari- <i>er</i>	moneri- <i>er</i>	regi- <i>er</i>	audiri- <i>er</i> .

which is rendered into English by the phrase "*about to be*;" as,

Lat. *Monitum iri*²⁰.

Eng. *About-to-be* advised.

QUESTIONS.

254. How many forms has the *imperative* passive for each 2nd person? (*Two*.) What is the first form for the second person singular? (The same as the *infinitive* active.) What is the second form? (The *-re* of the first form changed into *-tor*.) What does the short *e* of the third conjugation become? (*i*.)—255. What are the forms of the second person plural?—256. Whence are the other persons obtained? (From the *present subjunctive*.) Which are the second forms of the third persons? (The same as those of the active with *r* appended.)—257. How is the present *infinitive* passive obtained? (By changing the *e* of the active infinitive to *i*, in the first, second, and fourth conjugations.) (b) How is it formed for the third conjugation? (By changing the whole ending *-ere* into *-i*.)—258. How are the perfect and pluperfect formed? (Of the past participle in *agreement* with its substantivè, and *esse* or *fuisse*.)—259. What is the *futur* infinitive passive? (The supine in *-um*, with *-iri*.) What does it express? (*About to be*.)

EXERCISE 28.

260. *Syracusa*, G. *-æ*, *Syracuse*, an important town of ancient Sicily.
Scipio, G. *-onis*, *Scipio*, a celebrated Roman general, the conqueror of Carthage.
Libertas, G. *-atis*, *f.* liberty.
Caius, G. *Cai-i*, *Caius*, a noble Roman.
Conglutinatio, G. *-onis*, *f.* cement.
Recens, G. *-ntis*, adj. fresh.

²⁰ The word *iri* is properly the infinitive of the impersonal verb *itur* denoting "*things tend*;" hence,

Lat. *Audio eum monitum iri*.

Eng. I hear him to advising *that-things-tend*.

Eng. constr. [I hear *that-things-tend* to-advising him: or, *that he is about to be advised*.]—*Zumpt*.

Inveteratus-*a-um*, part. old, lasted a long time.
 Divell-*ĕre*, (-vellĭ⁹¹, -vulsum,) to tear asunder.
 Del-*ĕre*, (-ĕvi, -ĕtum,) to destroy, blot out.
 Sent-*ire*, (sensi, -sum,) to perceive, know.
 Ægre, *adv.*, with difficulty.
 Facile, *adv.*, easily.

Rem⁹² recte *geri* audio Romæ. Syracusæ regem *delectâri* dicunt senatōres. Carthaginem a Scipione *delectam-esse* omnes sciunt (199). Regulo libertatem non *dari*, sed *datam-esse* Caio, sentimus. Ab omnibus sapientibus *amator*. Magistro *audiamini*. Ab hoste exercitum *superatum-esse* milites vehementer negaverunt. Caium *pluris* (189, *a*) æstimari Romæ quam Carthagine videtis. Omnis conglutinatio recens ægre, inveterata facile *divellitur*.

261. Example.

De republicâ me bene *mereri* cogito.
Of the state that-I well have deserved I think.

Eng. constr. [I think that I have deserved well of the state.]

Be-ye-ruled by prudence. We hear *that* (omit) liberty *has-been-given* to Caius. They say⁹³ the king *was-overcome* by the numbers of the enemy. *Be advised* by Caius not (163) to return (160) home⁹⁴. I perceive *that* you *are advised* (*purpose*) to return to Africa (151, *c*). I know that you are *so much* (190) esteemed *as* to be loved by all. They say⁹³ the thing

⁹¹ *Divelli* more frequently than *divulsi* in the perfect tense.

⁹² The *accusative* with *infinitive* must be taken immediately after the principal verb, and be translated by putting the English word "*that*" before the accusative, and translating the infinitive as a principal verb; as, in the above sentence,—

Audio *rem* *geri* recte Romæ.

I hear *that* the thing was-carried-on properly at Rome.

⁹³ The word "*that*" is frequently omitted in English.

⁹⁴ *Domus*, a house, at home, and *rus*, *ruris*, the country, are used with the same construction as proper names of towns, &c., after verbs of *motion* (151, *a* and *c*).

is reckoned *at nothing*. It is *your duty* (183) to go to Rome to-day. It is *the business of* a king to govern the state. I shall remain *a few days* (150) at Carthage.

LESSON 28.

DEPONENT VERBS.

262. There are some verbs in Latin which have a *passive* form, but an *active* meaning; these are called *deponent verbs*⁹⁵; as,

Loquor, I speak.

263. Deponent verbs have different *cases* after them.

With *to forget—to remember—pity—place*
The noun that follows in the *genitive* case;
But *to enjoy, discharge*, and also *use*,
You must an *ablative* introduce⁹⁶.

QUESTIONS.

What are *deponent verbs*? (262.)—Which take a *genitive* after them? Which, an *ablative*?

EXERCISE 29.

264.

Munus, G. -ūs, n. duty, gift.	Vestis, G. -tis, f. a garment.
Frater, G. -tris, a brother.	Fœmina, G. -æ, a woman.
Præterita, G. -ŭrum, pl. things past.	Manus, G. -ūs, f. a hand.
Præsens, G. -ntis, adj. the present.	Factus-a-um, pl. done, made (from <i>facio</i>).
Commodus-a-um, adj. convenient (<i>commoda</i> , pl. things convenient, necessities).	Sardanapālus, G. -i, a very effeminate king of Assyria.
Lux, G. lucis, light.	Beneficium, G. -ii, a kindness.
	Pauper, G. er-is, adj. poor.

⁹⁵ They are called Deponent, because they *lay aside* their *passive* signification, and *active* form.

⁹⁶ To which may be added *potior*, to get possession of; *escor*, to feed; *dignor*, to be worthy; *nitor*, to endeavour; *lætor*, to rejoice; *glorior*, to boast,—taking *ablatives*.

Pos-ſe, (*posſe*), to-be-in-possession-of, enjoy (with *gen. acc.* or *abl.*).

Fung-i, (*functus*), to discharge (with *abl.* and sometimes *acc.*).

Vesc-i, to live upon, feed on (with *abl.* and sometimes *acc.*).

Uti, (*usus*), to use (with *abl.* and sometimes *acc.*).

Fru-i, (*fructus* & *fructus*), to enjoy (with *abl.* and sometimes *acc.*).

Nit-i, (*nī-us* & *nixus*), to endeavour.

Reminisc-i,

Memin-i, *meminisse*, } to recollect, remember.

(*Memini* has only the tenses of completed actions, *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *second future*.)

Miser-eri, (*miseritus* and *miseratus*), to pity.

Oblivisc-i, (*oblitus*), to forget.

Nunquam, *adv.* never.

Multis libris a doctissimo magistro meo scriptis nunc *potior*. Boni parentis munere frater *fungitur* excellentissime. Nititur, ut præteritorum reminiscatur beneficiorum. Præteritis *potitus-est* ille, nos præsentibus *potiemur*. Britanni carne et lacte *rescuntur*. Parentes liberorum *obliviscuntur* nunquam (68). Comoda quibus (note⁹⁷, p. 55,) *utimur*, lucemque quâ *fruimur*, a Deo nobis dari videmus. Veste sceminarum manibus suis factâ Sardanapalus *utitur*. Pauperum semper *miserere*.

265. Example.

Fraude utitur ut exercitum in itinere
·Deceit he uses that the army in its journey
sequatur.
may follow.

Eng. constr. [He uses deceit that he may follow the army in its journey.]

Always *remember* and *pity* the poor. A good (man) never *forgets* the kindness of his friends. It is *the duty* of children to endeavour to learn the precepts⁹⁷ of (their) masters (a *purpose*), and not to *forget* (*inf.*) to *discharge* (their) duty to their parents. Croesus *was-in-the-possession-of* money, not wisdom. We *live-*

⁹⁷ *Præcepta*.

upon flesh and milk. *Forget* not (147) to *use* and *enjoy* the necessities of life. Endeavour to estimate (*purpose*) virtue *at-a-great-price* (189). It is *the duty* of a magistrate *to-perform*²² justice, and it is *my duty* to obey the laws (*dat.*).

LESSON 29.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

POSSUM.

266. Such verbs as do not conform to the rules that have been previously laid down for the conjugation of verbs are termed *irregular* verbs.

267. Among these the first of importance is *possum* (to be able, or can, could), compounded of an old adjective *potis* and *sum*.

(a) The root *pot-* is retained in the conjugation of the verb, but the final letter undergoes some change: before *s* the *t* becomes *s*: as,

potsum becomes *possum* (*I am able*).

(b) The *t* coming before a vowel remains; as,

pot-es (*thou art able*).

pot-est (*he is able*).

(*pot-sumus*) *pos-sumus* (*we are able*).

pot-estis (*ye are able*).

(*pot-sunt*) *pos-sunt* (*they are able*).

(c) When the *t* comes before *f*, it throws away the *f*; as in the perfect, pluperfect, and second future tenses,

(*pot-fui*) becomes *pot-ui* (*I have been able*).

(*pot-fuisti*) . . . *pot-uisti* (*thou hast been able*).

And so on regularly.

268. According to these rules, apply the root *pot-* to all the tenses of *sum*²³.

²² Fugl.

²³ PRESENT.

Indicative.			Subjunctive.		
<i>pos-sum,</i> (<i>pot-sum</i>)	<i>pot-es,</i>	<i>pot-est,</i>	<i>pos-sim,</i> (<i>pot-sim</i>)	<i>pos-sis,</i>	<i>pos-sit,</i>
<i>pos-sumus,</i> (<i>pot-sumus</i>)	<i>pot-estis,</i>	<i>pos-sunt</i> (<i>pot-sunt</i>)	<i>pos-simus,</i>	<i>pos-sitis,</i>	<i>pos-sint.</i>

[IMPERFECT.]

(☞ There is no IMPERATIVE mood.

In the *present* INFINITIVE and *imperfect* SUBJUNCTIVE there is a contraction :

Infinitive, pot-esse contracts into posse.

Subjunctive, pot-essem becomes possem.

pot-esses posses. &c.

(And so on, throughout the tense.)

269. *Esse* when it means "to have" will place
The person in the *dative* case ;

270. The compounds too of *sum* a *dative* find
(Excepting *possum*, bear in mind).

Est mihi nomen (269) { *Lat.* A name is to me.
Eng. I have a name.

<i>Indicative.</i>			<i>IMPERFECT.</i>			<i>Subjunctive.</i> (contracted.)		
<i>pot-eram,</i>	<i>pot-eras,</i>	<i>pot-erat,</i>		<i>pos'sem,</i>	<i>pos'ses,</i>	<i>pos'set,</i>		
<i>pot-eramus,</i>	<i>pot-eratis,</i>	<i>pot-erant.</i>		<i>pos'semus,</i>	<i>pos'setis,</i>	<i>pos'sent.</i>		
FIRST FUTURE.								
	<i>pot-ero,</i>	<i>pot-eris,</i>		<i>pot-erit,</i>				
	<i>pot-erimus,</i>	<i>pot-eritis,</i>		<i>pot-erint.</i>				
PERFECT.								
(<i>pot-fui.</i>)	-			(<i>pot-fuerim.</i>)				
<i>pot-ui,</i>	<i>pot-uisti,</i>	<i>pot-uit,</i>		<i>pot-uerim,</i>	<i>pot-ueris,</i>	<i>pot-uerit,</i>		
<i>pot-uimus,</i>	<i>pot-uistis,</i>	<i>pot-uērunt</i> or <i>ēre.</i>		<i>pot-uerimus,</i>	<i>pot-ueritis,</i>	<i>pot-uerint.</i>		
PLUPERFECT.								
(<i>pot-fueram.</i>)				(<i>pot-fuissem.</i>)				
<i>pot-ueram,</i>	<i>pot-ueras,</i>	<i>pot-uerat,</i>		<i>pot-uissem,</i>	<i>pot-uisses,</i>	<i>pot-uisset,</i>		
<i>pot-ueramus,</i>	<i>pot-ueratis,</i>	<i>pot-uerant</i>		<i>pot-uissemus,</i>	<i>pot-uissetis,</i>	<i>pot-uissent</i>		
SECOND FUTURE.								
	(<i>pot-fuero.</i>)							
	<i>pot-uero,</i>	<i>pot-ueris,</i>		<i>pot-uerit,</i>				
	<i>pot-uerimus,</i>	<i>pot-ueritis,</i>		<i>pot-uerint.</i>				
INFINITIVE.								
<i>Present and Imperfect,</i>				<i>pos-se</i>	(pot-esse).			
<i>Perfect and Pluperfect,</i>				<i>pot-uisse</i>	(pot-fuisse).			
<i>Derivative Adjective</i> (not a participle),								
<i>pot-ens</i> (powerful).								

Some compounds of *sum* have a *present participle*; as, *absens*.

QUESTIONS.

266. What are those verbs termed that do not conform to the previous rules of conjugation? (*Irregular verbs.*)—267. What is *possum* compounded of? (Old adj. *potis* (able) and *sum*.) What changes does the final letter of the root undergo? (The *t* before *s* becomes *s* (*a*); before a vowel *t* remains (*b*); and before *f* it throws away *f* (*c*), 268.—Apply the root *pot* to all the tenses of *sum* according to these rules. (Note²⁹.) What is the imperative of *possum*? (It has none.) What does the *present* infinitive and *imperfect* subjunctive of *possum* suffer? (*Contraction* (§37)) What does *sum* require when it means *to have*? [A *dative* (269).] What do the compounds of *sum* require? [All require a *dative* except *possum* (270).] What is *potens*? (An *adjective*, not a *participle*, note²⁹ *.*.)

EXERCISE 30.

271. *Present tense.*

Ego facere possum, *I can do.*
Tu facere potes, *thou canst do,*
(*and so on.*)

Perfect.

Ego facere potui, *I could have done.*
Tu facere potuisti, *thou couldst have done.*

(*Past* time is to be expressed by the *finite* verb, not by the *infinitive*.)

Tres, (neut. *tria*), *adj.* three.

Rus, G. *ruris*, *n.* country.

Facultas, G. *-ātis*, *f.* opportunity, power.

Voluptas, G. *-ātis*, *f.* pleasure.

Conjunctio, G. *-ōnis*, *f.* union.

Ingenium, G. *-i*, talent, skill.

Opus, G. *-ŕis*, *n.* a work.

Ambul-are, to walk.

De-esse, (de-fui,) to be wanting, fail.

Si, *conj.* if.

Tres *mihī sunt* libri ruris. (Note³⁰, p. 104.) Mater mea hodie hoc facere *potest*. Eo tempore Corinthum ambulare non *potero*. Dolabella epistolam

scribere *potuit*, si venisset in Græciam. Rem facere *potuisti* si tibi facultas esset. Nulla *potest* esse voluptati (270) cum honestate conjunctio. Ad hoc opus mihi ingenium non *defuit*. Idætatís (184) nihil Cæsari *defuit*. Tres annos Carthagine manserunt duces. Ne multum discas sed multa.

272. Example.

Sunt mihi bis septem liberi.

There are to me twice seven children.

Eng. constr. [*I have fourteen children.*]

*You have three slaves, and I have fourteen: I can do this properly if you will come home. We could have walked into the city. He has much talent but you have more money, and I have very little time. I can write to Cæsar. I can write*¹⁰⁰*. Many things failed me at that time. At that age I had many opportunities during playing (part. in -dus, 69). We shall be able to write three letters to-day. I shall remain at Carthage four days. I have much money, which I can enjoy.*

LESSON 30.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*).

VOLO, NOLO, MALO.

273. *Volo* (to be willing) with its compounds *nolo*, for *non-volo* (to be unwilling); and *malo*, for *magis volo* (to be more willing), is very irregular, but only in the *present* tenses throughout, and in the *imperfect subjunctive*.

¹⁰⁰ To express the power of doing a thing *generally*, *possim* is used; the power to do a *particular* thing requires *possum*.

274. The *present tenses* of these verbs are all contracted.

INDICATIVE *Present*.

(*To be willing.*) (*To be unwilling.*) (*To be more willing, or to have rather.*)

Sing.

<i>volo</i>	<i>nolo</i>	<i>mało</i>
<i>vis</i> (for <i>colis</i>)	<i>non-vis</i>	<i>ma-vis</i>
<i>vult</i> (for <i>colit</i>)	<i>non-vult</i>	<i>ma-vult</i>

Plural.

<i>colū-mus</i>	<i>nolū-mus</i>	<i>malū-mus</i>
<i>vul-tis</i> (for <i>colitis</i>)	<i>non-vul-tis</i>	<i>ma-vul-tis</i>
<i>colunt</i>	<i>nolunt</i>	<i>malunt</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE *Present*¹⁰¹.

<i>velim</i>	<i>nolim</i>	<i>malim</i>
<i>velis</i>	<i>nolis</i>	<i>malis</i>
&c.	&c.	&c.

With the regular personal endings (140).

INFINITIVE *Present*.

<i>velle</i>	<i>nolle</i>	<i>mallo</i>
--------------	--------------	--------------

IMPERATIVE *Present*.

<i>volo</i>	<i>noli</i>	<i>nolito</i>	<i>mało</i>
has none.	pl. <i>noli-te</i> , <i>noli-tote</i> .		has none.

275. The other irregularity is only in the *imperfect subjunctive*.

<i>vellem</i>	<i>nollem</i>	<i>mallem</i>
<i>velles</i>	<i>nolles</i>	<i>malles</i>
&c.	&c.	&c.

With the usual endings (140).

276. The remaining tenses are like the third conj.,

¹⁰¹ The present *subjunctive* is often used for the present *indicative* of these verbs, to *soften* the expression.

but the *perfect* is in *-ui*, which affects all the *completed* actions ¹⁰².

277. (a) When the English words "*will*" and "*would*" imply merely *futurity*, they are expressed in Latin by a tense of the following verb; as,

I *will* come—*veniam*

I *would* come—*venirem*.

- (b) When these words imply *inclination*, or when the sentence is *absolute* and *independent* of any other, use a tense of *volo*; and put the following verb in the *infinitive*.

I *will* go—*ire volo*

I *would* go—*ire vellem*.

278. When "*can*" and "*could*" are in sentences *absolute* and *independent* of any other, they can be expressed by a tense of *possum* with the following verb in the *infinitive*; as,

Eng. I *can* read

Lat. *Legere possum*.

102 INDICATIVE.			
<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Vol-ebam, &c.</i>	<i>nol-ebam, &c.</i>	<i>mal-ebam, &c.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>Vol-am, &c.</i>	<i>nol-am, &c.</i>	<i>mal-am, &c.</i>
Completed-actions.			
INDICATIVE.			
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Vol-ui, &c.</i>	<i>nol-ui, &c.</i>	<i>mal-ui, &c.</i>
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Volu-eram, &c.</i>	<i>nolu-eram, &c.</i>	<i>malu-eram, &c.</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>Volu-ero, &c.</i>	<i>nolu-ero, &c.</i>	<i>malu-ero, &c.</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE.			
<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Volu-erim, &c.</i>	<i>nolu-erim, &c.</i>	<i>malu-erim, &c.</i>
<i>Pluperfect.</i>	<i>Volu-issem, &c.</i>	<i>nolu-issem, &c.</i>	<i>malu-issem, &c.</i>
INFINITIVE.			
<i>Perfect & Pluperf.</i>	<i>Volu-isse</i>	<i>nolu-isse</i>	<i>malu-isse</i>
PARTICIPLE.			
	<i>Vol-ens</i>	<i>nol-ens</i>	<i>mal-ens, has none.</i>

279. "*That—not*" with a *purpose* must not be
 "*Ut*" with a negative, but only "*no*."

QUESTIONS.

273. What are the compounds of *volo*? In what tenses are they so very irregular?—274. Go through the *present* tenses of these verbs.—275. What is the other irregularity?—276. How are the remaining tenses conjugated? (Like the third conjugation.) What is the perfect ending? (*-ui*.) What does this affect? (All the tenses for the *completed* actions formed from it, as in the other conjugations.)—277. How are *will* and *would* expressed in Latin when denoting *futurity*? (By a tense of the verb following *will* and *would*.) When these words imply *inclination*, and when the sentence is independent of any other, how is it expressed? (By a tense of *volo* with the following verb in the *infinitive*.)—278. When *can* and *could* are in *independent* sentences, how are they expressed? (By a tense of *possum* with the following verb in the *infinitive*.)—279. How is *that* followed by *not* in a purpose expressed?

EXERCISE 31.

280. Pericūlum, G. -i, danger.
 Petens, G. -ntis, (part.) seeking.
 Ridiculus-a-um, adj. ridiculous.
 Invidia, G. -æ, f. envy, odium.
 Aliq-uis, -qua, -quod and quid, pron. some.
 Ire, iri, (perf. of eo,) to go.
 Redire, ivi, to return.
 Appar-ere, to appear, be visible.
 Ambul-are, to walk.
 Port-are, to carry.
 Conserv-are, to preserve.
 Impetr-are, to effect, bring to pass.
 Quer-ere, (quesivi, -situm,) to seek.
 Vid-eri, (visus,) to seem.
 Videre, (vidi, visus,) to see.
 Confi-are, to bring, make.

Athenas ire voluit, *no*¹⁰³ Cæsarem *viderit*. Hoc

¹⁰³ "*Ne* with the *subjunctive* may be rendered by "*lest*;" or "*not to*;" or by "*that—not*."

nunc *facere possum*. Multum discere volo, *ne insipiens appaream*. Eum rogabo ut domum ambulet. Titurius hoc fecit, *ut sine periculo ad eum portari possset*. Petentibus hostibus ut conservarentur, Cæsar impetravit. Est ridiculum querere quæ habere non possumus. Tu mihi videbare aliquam invidiam Cælio¹⁰⁴ velle conflare. Spartam redire *volebat*, *ne invidiam conflaret*. *Malui esse quam videri bonus*.

281. Example.

Nolui hoc facere, *ne insipiens viderer*.
I was unwilling this to do, lest foolish I should seem.

English construction. [I was unwilling to do this, lest I should seem foolish.]

I *am-willing* to write the letter *lest* (note¹⁰³ p. 113.) I *bring* some odium on-myself (*dat.*). Titurius *will do* (277, *b*) this, *that* he *may please* Cæsar. I will-ask him to do (*ut* and *subj.*) this to-day. I *am-more-willing* to go to-Rome than to Corinth. The soldiers seeking (it) (*abl. abs.*), Titurius brought-it-to-pass *that* he might *not* seem unfriendly. He was-unwilling to seek what (*neut. pl.*) he *was* not *able* to have. He can do (278) this. I *shall walk* to Athens *that* I *may not* appear unfriendly. *When* the ambassadors were sent (216), he remained at Rome four days to preserve (*purpose*) his brother. If I am wiser than (*quam*) my father, I shall *remain* two days *lest* I may-forget what is to be done (*pt. in -dus*).

LESSON 31.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued*).

FERO—*passive*, FEROR.

282. The verb *fero* (to bear) and its passive *feror* (to be borne) are composed of different parts, and

¹⁰⁴ Cælio, *on Cælius*.

have irregularity only in the *present* tense indicative and imperative.

283. The root of the tenses for *not-completed* actions (*pres. imp.* and *fut.*) is *fer-* (*fer-o*); as,

INDICATIVE.

Present.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Fero fers fert</i>	<i>feror ferris fertur</i>	
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>ferimus fertis ferunt</i>	<i>ferimur ferimini feruntur</i>	

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Sing.</i>	2d, <i>fer</i>	<i>ferto</i>	<i>ferre</i>	<i>fertor</i>	
	3d,	<i>ferto</i>		<i>fertor</i>	
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>fer-te</i>	<i>ferto-te</i>	<i>feri-mīnī</i>	<i>feri-mīnor</i>	<i>feruntor.</i>

INFINITIVE.

Ferre

Ferri.

* * These tenses form the only *irregularity*.

	ACT.	PASS.
284. The <i>present</i> <i>SUNJ.</i> is	<i>feram</i>	<i>ferar</i> (reg.)
<i>imperf. INDIC.</i>	<i>ferēbam</i>	<i>ferebar</i> (reg.)
<i>imperf. SUNJ.</i>	<i>ferrem</i>	<i>ferrer</i> (reg.)
<i>participle pres.</i>	<i>ferens.</i>	
<i>gerunds</i>	<i>ferendi-do-dum.</i>	

285. The tenses of the *completed*-actions are formed from the root *tul-* (*tulī*), and are all regularly declined.

	INDIC.	SUBJ.	INFIN.
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>tul-i, &c.</i>	<i>tul-erim, &c.</i>	} <i>tul-isse.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>tul-eram, &c.</i>	<i>tul-issem, &c.</i>	
<i>Fut. perf.</i>	<i>tul-ero, &c.</i>		

286. The *perfect participle* is from the root *lat-* (*latus*), and is used for the tenses of the *completed*-actions in the passive¹⁰⁵.

¹⁰⁵ In the passive,

<i>Perfect,</i>	<i>latus-sum, &c.</i>	<i>latus-erim, &c.</i>	} <i>latus-esse.</i>
<i>Pluperf.</i>	<i>latus-eram, &c.</i>	<i>latus-essem, &c.</i>	
<i>Fut. perf.</i>	<i>latus-ero, &c.</i>		

*Perf. part.**Latus.**Fut. in -rus.**latu-rus-a-um*¹⁰⁶.

287. "*So*" and "*such*" preceding "*that*"¹⁰⁷,
A consequence relate ;
 By "*ut*" with the *subjunctive* then
This consequence translate.

As, *Tam benignus est ut omnibus ametur.*
So kind he-is that by-all he-is-loved.

Eng. constr. He is *so* kind *that* he-is-loved by all,
 or, He is *so* kind *as to* be loved by all¹⁰⁷

288. When *negatives* attend a *consequence*,
"That" still express by "*ut* ;"
 For "*not*," or English *negative*, you then
A Latin negative must put.

As, *Tam ignavus est puer, ut non facere possit.*
So idle is the boy, that not do he can.

(Consequence.)

Eng. constr. [*So idle is the boy, that he cannot do (it)*].

¹⁰⁶ The compounds of *fero* are declined in the same way :

<i>affero</i>	<i>at-tuli</i>	<i>ad-latum</i> (bring) (<i>ad</i> , to).
<i>aufero</i>	<i>abs-tuli</i>	<i>ab-latum</i> (take away) (<i>a</i> , <i>ab</i> , <i>abs</i> , from).
<i>confero</i>	<i>con-tuli</i>	<i>col-latum</i> (bring together) (<i>cum</i> , with).
<i>differo</i>	<i>dis-tuli</i>	<i>di-latum</i> (scatter) (<i>di</i> or <i>dis</i> , apart).
<i>effero</i>	<i>ex-tuli</i>	<i>e-latum</i> (carry out) (<i>e</i> , <i>ex</i> , out).
<i>infero</i>	<i>in-tuli</i>	<i>il-latum</i> (carry in) (<i>in</i> , in).
<i>offero</i>	<i>ob-tuli</i>	<i>ob-latum</i> (bring to) (<i>ob</i> , <i>for</i> , against).
<i>profero</i>	<i>pro-tuli</i>	<i>pro-latum</i> (set forward) (<i>pro</i> , <i>for</i>).
<i>refero</i>	<i>re-tuli</i>	<i>re-latum</i> (bring again) (<i>re</i> , again, back).
<i>suffero</i>	<i>sus-tuli</i>	<i>sub-latum</i> * (bear) (<i>sub</i> , under).
<i>transfero</i>	<i>trans-tuli</i>	<i>translatum</i> (transfer) (<i>trans</i> , on the other side).

* *Sustuli* and *sublatum* are borrowed from the verb *tollo* ; *suffero* has not these tenses of its own.

¹⁰⁷ Instead of "*that*" after *so* and *such*, we often find "*as-to*," which also requires *ut* and the *subj.*

289. When *negatives* attend a *purpose*,
Remember, "*ut*" will be,
With the negative omitted,
Converted into "*ne*."

As, Puerum monet ne faciat. (*Purpose*.
The boy he advises *that not* he may do (it).)

Eng. constr. [*He advises the boy that he may not do it.*]
Or, [*He advises the boy not to do it.*]

QUESTIONS.

282. Wherein does the irregularity of *fero* and its passive *feror* consist?—283. What is the root of the tenses for the *not-completed* actions? (*fe-*.) Say the *present* tenses indicative, imperative, and infinitive.—284. What are the tenses of the *present subjunctive*? The *imperfect* indic. and subj.? The *present participle*? and the *gerunds*?—285. From what root are tenses for the *completed*-actions formed? (*Tul-*.) How are they conjugated? (*Regularly*.) Say the *first* persons of each tense.—286. From what root is the *perfect* participle and future in *-rus* derived? (*Lat-*.) For what other tenses is this same root used? (See note ¹⁰³.)—287. When *so* and *such* precede "*that*," what do they imply? (A *consequence*.) How is a consequence expressed? (Say the lines 287.) What is often found after *so* and *such* instead of "*that*"? (*as to*.)—288. When *negatives* such as *not*, *none*, *never*, &c. attend a *consequence*, how are they expressed? (Say lines 288.)—289. When *negatives* attend a *purpose*, how are they expressed? (Say lines 289.)

EXERCISE 32.

290. *Immortalis*, -talis, *adj.* immortal.
 Consilium, G. -lii, design.
 Auvilium, G. -lii, assistance.
 Tarditas, G. -tatis, *f.* slowness.
 Salvus-a-um, *adj.* safe.
 Quirites, -tium, pl. *Quirites*, a name applied to Roman citizens.
 Audacia, G. -æ, *f.* audacity, boldness.
 Nullus-a-um, *indef.-pron.* none.

Improbu*s-a-um*, *adj.* wicked, profligate.

Præscrib-*ĕre*, (*-psi*, *-ptum*,) to direct, prescribe (*dat.*).

Ag-*ĕre*, (*egi*, *actum*,) to do.

Fero, ferre, } (*tuli*, *latum*,) { to bear, carry.

Feror, ferri, } { to be borne.

Obstup-*ĕre*, (from *obstupesco*, *obstupui*,) to be astonished.

Colloc-*āre*, to place.

Statu-*ĕre*, (*statui*, *ūtum*,) to appoint, determine.

Perspic-*ĕre*, (*-exi*, *-ectum*,) to behold, see into.

Lacess-*ĕre*, (*-sivi* and *īi*, *itum*,) to provoke, excite.

Administr-*āre*, to manage.

Magistratus militibus præscripsērunt, nū¹⁰⁸ quid (289) agerent. Omnia fert ætas. Sic obstupuērunt ut patrem suum non viderent. Omnia hæc ita sunt a me administrata¹⁰⁹, ut deorum immortalium consilio gesta esse videantur. Tertio die auxilium nobis tulērunt. Tanta fuit operis tarditas, ut neque a consulibus neque a nobis ferretur. Illos ita collocandos consules statuērunt, ut ab omnibus perspici possent. Ita me gessi, Quirites, ut omnes salvi conservaremini. Est in nobis tantus animus, ut non modo nullius audaciæ cedamus, sed etiam omnes improbos semper lacesamus.

291. Example.

Nemo tam bonus est, ut omnem injuriam ferat.

No-one so good is, as¹¹⁰ every indignity to-bear.

[No one is so good as to bear every indignity.]

Junius was not so unskilled in matters (*rerum*) as¹¹⁰ to trust¹¹¹ that he was-able to overcome the Roman

¹⁰⁸ Translate "ne" as "not," and the verb as an infinitive—ne quid agerent, not to do anything.

¹⁰⁹ The perfect with *have* may be considered as referring to present time, and is therefore followed by a *pres.* subjunctive.

¹¹⁰ *As* after *so* and *such*, when they precede infinitives, is rendered into Latin by *ut*, and the verb must be in the subjunctive and in the tense required by the preceding verb. (See 163.)

¹¹¹ *Confidat*.

people with *his-own* forces. They were so poor *that* they were *not* able *to-bring* assistance to their own (friends). He *bears* the thing well. *So great* is his courage, *that* he yields *not* to any-one. The consul determined that the standard ¹¹² *should be* so *placed* (fut. part. in *-dus*) that (it) could be seen by all. They *brought* assistance, *that* they might *not* (289) offend Cæsar. The magistrates so directed the soldiers *that* they could (use *possum*) do *nothing*. It is the *duty of* (one) a friend, to help another (*dat.*) in adversity.

LESSON 32.

IRREGULAR VERBS (*continued.*)

EDO. FIO. EO.

292. *Edo* (I eat) is conjugated regularly like the third conjugation; but it has in addition, in some few tenses, a form similar to those of *sum* ¹¹³.

293. *Fio* (I become *or* am made) has an active form for the tenses of the *not-completed* actions (*pres. imp.* and *fut.*) which are all regularly declined like the fourth conjugation.

¹¹² <i>Vexillum.</i>			
¹¹³ INDICATIVE (<i>Present.</i>)			
		IMPERATIVE.	
<i>Sing.</i>	Edo	<i>Sing.</i> ede edito edito	} or { <i>es</i> <i>esto</i> <i>esto</i>
	Edis or <i>es</i>		
	Edit or <i>est</i>		
<i>Plur.</i>	Edimus	<i>Plur.</i> edite editote edunto	} or { <i>este</i> <i>estote</i> <i>estote</i>
	Editis		
	Edunt		
SUBJUNCTIVE (<i>Imperfect.</i>)			
<i>Sing.</i>	Ederem or <i>essem</i>	<i>Plur.</i> ederemus ederetis ederent	or or or
	Ederes or <i>esses</i>		
	Ederet or <i>esset</i>		
INFINITIVE.			
Edere or <i>esse</i> .			

294. It serves as the passive of *facio* (I make), from which it borrows the *past participle*, and all the tenses for the *completed actions* (*perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect*)¹¹⁴.

295. (a) *Eo* (I go) in all the tenses for the *completed actions* (*perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect*) is regular, and these tenses are declined like the fourth conjugation.

(b) The tenses for the *not-completed actions* (*present, imperfect, and future*) are the only irregular parts of the verb.

Indicative PRESENT.

Singular.

Plural.

eo, is, it. imus, itis, eunt.

Subjunctive PRESENT.

eam, eas, &c.

Indic. IMPERF.

Subj. IMPERF.

ibam, ibas, &c.

irem, ires, &c.

Fut. ibo, ibis, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

Singular.

Plural.

2nd person, i, ito.

ite, itote.

3rd person, ito.

eunto.

114

114

INDICATIVE.

IMPERATIVE.

Not-
completed
actions. }

Pres. fio. Imp. fiebam. Fut. fiam.

fi, fito.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. fiam. Imp. fierem.

fieri.

INDICATIVE.

Perf. factus sum. Pluperf. factus eram. Fut. perf. factus ero.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perf. factus erim. Pluperf. factus essem.

INFINITIVE.

Part. factus. Perf. factum esse. Fut. factum iri.

GERUND.

cundi, cundo, cundum.

*Part. present.*icns; *Genitive, cuntis.*Perfect tense is *ivi*. Supines, *itum, itu*.

QUESTIONS.

292. How is *edo* (to eat) conjugated? (Regularly, like the 3rd conj.) To what verb are some of its forms similar? (To those of *sum*.)—293. What form has *fi* (I become or am made) for the pres. imp. and fut. tenses? (An active form regularly declined, like the 4th conj.)—294. To which verb does it serve as a passive? (To *facio*, I make.) What parts does *fi* borrow from *facio*?—295. (a) What parts of *eo* (I go) are regular? (The tenses for the completed actions *perf.*, *pluperf.*, and *fut. perf.*) (b) What are the irregular parts of *eo*? (*Pres.*, *imp.*, and *fut.* tenses.) Say the *present* indicative and subjunctive: the *imperfect* indicative and subjunctive: the *future*: the *imperative*: the *gerunds*: and the *present participle*. What is the *past* tense? What are the *supines*?

EXERCISE 33.

296. These words are continually found in sentences answering to each other; therefore, when one occurs, look for the other.

<i>tot</i> , so many; as many . . .	<i>quot</i> ¹¹⁵ , as (also how many; as many as).
<i>tantus</i> , so great . . .	<i>quantus</i> , as (also how great; how many; how much; as great as; such as).
<i>talis</i> , such . . .	<i>qualis</i> , as (also of what kind or manner; what).
<i>idem</i> , the same . . .	<i>qui</i> , as.
<i>idem</i> , as well . . .	<i>idem</i> , as.

¹¹⁵ *Quot* also means *every, each*, joined to the ablatives *annis, diebus, mensibus, &c.*; as, *quot annis*, every year, yearly; *quot mensibus*, monthly.

<i>tam</i> , as well	<i>quam</i> ¹¹⁶ , as.
<i>quum</i> , or } when	<i>tum</i> , then.
<i>cum</i> , {	
<i>tum</i> , { as well,	<i>tum</i> , { as.
{ at one time,	{ at another.
{ now,	{ now.
<i>prius</i> , { before,	<i>quam</i> , { that.
{ sooner,	{ than.
{ rather,	{ than.
<i>magis</i> , more	<i>quam</i> , than (<i>quam</i> is often omitted, and the <i>ablative</i> employed).

In Miltiade¹¹⁷ erat *cum* summa humanitas *tum* mira comitas. *Quot* homines sunt, *tot* causæ fiunt. *Tantum*¹¹⁸ dimicationem viderunt, *quanta* nunquam fuit. *Talis* es, *qualem* te esse video. *Qualem* te præbuiisti, *talem* te impertias. Omnia *prius* verbis experiri, *quam* armis sapientis est. *Eadem* est virtus *quæ* in proavo. *Idem* mæstitiam reprehendit, *idem* jocum. Expetuntur divitiæ *cum* ad usus vitæ necessarios *tum* ad perfruendas voluptates. *Quum* recte navigari poterit, *tum* naviges.

297. Example.

Talis fiet, *qualis* est Caius.

Such he will become *as* is Caius.

Eng. constr. [He will become *such as* Caius is.]

-- I am a man *as well as* you. *As many* men *as* opinions. They saw *as great* (Note¹¹⁹) a contest *as ever* happened. I am become *such as* you. The enemy have the *same* power *as* we (have). *When* the enemy fled, *then* we returned home. *At one time* he was made dictator; *at another*, consul. Cæsar will

¹¹⁶ Before comparatives and superlatives, *tam*, the—*quam*, the; *as*, *Quam* maxime fit, *tam* pessime.

The more it is done, *the* worse (it is).

¹¹⁷ *Miltiades*, G. -dis, a celebrated Athenian general, the conqueror of the Persians at Marathon.

¹¹⁸ When any of the *declinable* words in the above list refer to different nouns, and depend on different verbs, they take the *gender*, *number*, and *case* the nouns and verbs they refer to require.

go to Rome *rather than* to Gaul. He loves reading (*pres. inf.*) *more than* writing. The queen will leave¹¹⁹ the city *before that*¹²⁰ the enemy returns. He re-
proved *as well* (his) sadness *as* (his) jesting.

LESSON 33.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

298. Those verbs which are found only in the *third person singular* are called IMPERSONAL verbs, because they do not admit of a *personal* subject or *nominative*, such as *I, thou, he, we, you, they*, before them.

299. The *impersonals* generally take before them a *proposition* or a *neuter noun* answering to the English pronoun "*it*;" and the English *personal nominative* is put into the case the impersonal governs; as,

Eng. *I am-grieved.*
Lat. { *It grieves me.*
 { *Piget* ¹²¹ *me.*

¹¹⁹ *Excedere* with *abl.*

¹²⁰ "*That*" is often omitted in English.

¹²¹ When *b, l, ſ, t, r, d, ſs** conclude a word,
Short (˘) must the ending be inferr'd;
But *ſ, c, ã, n, i**, with *ãs*, and *ẽs*,
Long (˘) are reckoned, if you please.

And further,

A *vowel* before two consonants † is long;
A rule remember,—with this other;—
That every *vowel* is reckon'd short,
Whenever followed by another.

* These words following will impress the letters stronger in the memory,—*blister'd us—ocean.*

† The consonants may be in different words: one at the *end* of one word, and the other at the *beginning* of the following.

GERUND.

eundi, eundo, eundum.

*Part. present.*iens; *Genitive*, euntis.* * Perfect tense is *ivi*. Supines, *itum*, *itu*.

QUESTIONS.

292. How is *edo* (to eat) conjugated? (Regularly, like the 3rd conj.) To what verb are some of its forms similar? (To those of *sum*.)—293. What form has *fio* (I become or am made) for the pres. imp. and fut. tenses? (An active form regularly declined, like the 4th conj.)—294. To which verb does it serve as a passive? (To *facio*, I make.) What parts does *fio* borrow from *facio*?—295. (a) What parts of *eo* (I go) are regular? (The tenses for the *completed* actions *perf.*, *pluperf.*, and *fut. perf.*) (b) What are the *irregular* parts of *eo*? (*Pres.*, *imp.*, and *fut.* tenses.) Say the *present* indicative and subjunctive: the *imperfect* indicative and subjunctive: the *future*: the *imperative*: the *gerunds*: and the *present participle*. What is the *past* tense? What are the *supines*?

EXERCISE 33.

296. These words are continually found in sentences answering to each other; therefore, when one occurs, look for the other.

<i>tot</i> , so many; as many . . .	<i>quot</i> ¹¹⁵ , as (<i>also</i> how many; as many as).
<i>tantus</i> , so great . . .	<i>quantus</i> , as (<i>also</i> how great; how many; how much; as great as; such as).
<i>talis</i> , such . . .	<i>qualis</i> , as (<i>also</i> of what kind or manner; what).
<i>idem</i> , the same . . .	<i>qui</i> , as.
<i>idem</i> , as well . . .	<i>idem</i> , as.

¹¹⁵ *Quot* also means *every, each*, joined to the ablatives *annis, diebus, mensibus*, &c.; as, *quot annis*, every year, yearly; *quot mensibus*, monthly.

303. The rest will take a *dative* case ;
 An *accusative*, the transitives ;
 While *interest*, and *refert*, ablatives in *-ā* ;
 But *interest* often *genitives*.

QUESTIONS.

298. What are verbs *impersonal*? Why are they so called?—
 299. What do these impersonals generally take before them? Into what case is the English *nom.* put?—300. Are other verbs used *impersonally*?—301. When must the *impersonal* verb be used? (a) When the verb is followed in English by an *infinitive*, which may be used as its *nominalive*? (b) When the English verb is not followed by an *infinitive*, what verb must be used? (A *personal* verb.) What *final* letters make the vowel preceding *short*? (Note ¹²¹.) What, *long*? What is a vowel before two consonants? (*Long*.) When is a vowel *short*? (When before another vowel. Say note ¹²¹, p. 123.)—302. What case do some *impersonals* require the person feeling to be in? (*Accusative*.) What the *cause* or *object* of the feeling? (*Genitive*.) Name these *impersonals*. (Notes ¹²², ¹²¹, p. 124.)—303. What case do other impersonals take? (*Dative*.) What, if they are *transitives*? (*Accusative*.) What case does *interest* require?

Eng. *I am not only grieved at my folly, but also ashamed.*

Lat. *It grieves me not only of my folly, but also it shames (me).*

Lat. { *Me non solum piget stultitiæ meæ, sed etiam pudet.*

{ *Me not only it grieves of folly my, but also it shames.*

[The *person* grieved is *me*, which is in the *accusative*; and *my folly*, the *cause* of grief, is in the *genitive*.]

¹²² The *cause* or *object* is often put in the *infinitive*, or into a sentence with *quod* or some other relative; as,

Eng. *I repent of offending you.*

Lat. *It repents me that I have offended you.*

Lat. { *Pœnitet me, quod te offendi.*

{ *It repents me, that thee I have offended.*

Eng. *I am not ashamed of having done this.*

Lat. *It shames me not to-have-done this.*

Lat. { *Non pudet me hoc fecisse.*

{ *Not it shames me this to have done.*

Particularly with *deceet*, *dedecet*, *delectat*, *juvat*, and *oportet*.

(The *genitive*, or the personal pronoun adjectives in the *feminine* ablative, as *meā, tuā, suā*, &c.) What does *refert* require? [The *fem.* ablatives *meā, tuā, suā*, &c.; seldom a *gen.* (307, note ¹²⁸.)] In what is the *cause* or *object* sometimes put? (Note ¹²⁸.)

EXERCISE 34.

304. <i>Miseret,</i>	} it pities.
<i>Miserescit,</i>	
<i>Miseretur,</i>	
<i>Piget,</i>	it grieves.
<i>Pudet,</i>	it shames.
<i>Pœnitet,</i>	it repents.
<i>Tædet,</i>	it wearies, or irketh.
<i>Decet,</i>	it becomes, } followed by <i>acc.</i> of person
<i>Dedecet,</i>	it misbecomes, } and <i>infinitive</i> .
<i>Delectat,</i>	it delights.

[In translating, take the *acc.* as if the *nom.* to the verb.]

Me *piget* stultitiæ tuæ. *Pœnitet* me quod illos offendi; non *pœnitet* me quantum profecerim. *Miseret* me populi. *Pudet* te ignorantia tuæ. Socratem non *puduit* fatēri, se multas res nescire. *Miseret* me tui. *Tædet* me vitæ. Me civitatis morum *piget*, *tædetque*. Eos ineptiarum *pœniteret*. *Pœnitebat* me peccati. *Miseret* te aliorum, tui te nec *miseret* nec *pudet*. Te id *puduit* facere. Non *decet* te rixari.

~ 305. Example.

Lat. { *Miseret* me calamitatis tuæ.
 { *It pities me of misfortune your.*

Eng. constr. [*I pity your misfortune.*]

I pity (302) you (it pities me of you). He was ashamed of his folly. You are weary of life. I am grieved to confess that I am ignorant-of (know not) many things. I am delighted (301, a) to see you. You will-repent-of your folly. *It-does* not *become* a man to-scold. It misbecomes a youth to be idle during-learning [*inter* and *ger.* (231)]. I am ashamed of you and your ignorance. I am weary of study.

He was ashamed of his delay. He has *too much* (138) money, and *very little* wisdom. He remained at-Rome *some time*. I shall go to-Rome *to hear* (160) Cicero.

LESSON 34.

IMPERSONALS (*continued*).

306. Repeat the lines (303) respecting the other *impersonals*.

The rest will take a *dative* case,
An *accusative* the *transitives*;
While *interest* and *refert*, ablatives in *-ā* ;
But *interest* often *genitives*.

307. *Interest* and *refert* take after them a *genitive* of the person whose interest is concerned, or these *feminine ablatives* of the pronouns instead, viz.,

meā, tuā, eūā, nostrā, vestrā ¹²⁶.

308. The thing in which the interest is involved follows in the *accusative* and *infinitive*, or with *ut* (or some other particle) and the *subjunctive*; as,

It is to my interest that you are diligent.

Meā interest te esse diligentem.

or ut diligens sis.

or utrum diligens sis, necne (or not).

. *Refert* seldom is followed by a *genitive*, and is oftener used in the phrases, *Quid refert?* what is the matter? what difference does it make? and *nihil refert*; it makes no difference; &c.

¹²⁶ Some authors consider these pronouns as *neuter plural nominatives*; others, as *ablatives feminine*, agreeing with some such word as *causā* or *gratiā* understood.

EXERCISE 35.

309. *Impersonals* followed by a *dative*.

<i>Libet,</i>	it pleases.
<i>Licet,</i>	{ it is lawful, (<i>I may, thou mayest, &c.</i>) it is permitted.
<i>Liquet,</i>	it is clear, manifest, evident.
<i>Convenit,</i>	it suits, it is fitting, it becomes.
<i>Accidit,</i>	{ it happens, { followed generally by <i>ut</i> and a <i>subjunctive</i> .
<i>Contingit,</i>	
<i>Evenit,</i>	
<i>Expedit,</i>	it is expedient.

And others of like signification.

With <i>gen. Interest,</i>	{ it concerns, it is important,
<i>Refert,</i>	{ it is of importance, it is the interest of.

310. *May* and *might* can thus be conjugated with *licet*:

PRS. <i>Mihi legere licet,</i>	I may read.
<i>Tibi legere licet,</i>	thou mayest read.
<i>Illi legere licet,</i>	he may read.
<i>Nobis legere licet,</i>	we may read.
<i>Vobis legere licet,</i>	you may read.
<i>Illi legere licet,</i>	they may read.
PRES. <i>Mihi legere licuit,</i>	I might have read.
<i>Tibi legere licuit,</i>	thou mightest have read ¹²⁷ .
	&c. &c.

QUESTIONS.

307. What do *interest* and *refert* take after them? How is the *thing* expressed in which the interest is involved? (308.) How can *may* and *might* be expressed and conjugated? (310.) How is *past* time expressed?

¹²⁷ In expressing *ability, will, liberty, duty, &c.*, in *present* time, the English employs both verbs in the *present tense*, and so also does the Latin; as,

Mihi legere licet, I may go.

When *past* time is to be expressed, the English employs both verbs in the *past tense*; the Latin does *not*: it puts the governing verb only in the *past tense*, and the infinitive remains in the *present*; as,

Mihi legere licuit, I might have read.

1 Take the *datice* first, as if a personal nominative.

Non libet mihi committere proelium. Expediit rei-publicæ. Licet mihi vera referre. Licet nemini preecare. Non eritis homini contingit adire Corinthum. Interest omnium vera dicere. Nostrâ refert recte facere. Magni¹²³ interest meâ hoc scribere. Cæsar dicere solebat non tam suâ quam reipublicæ interesse uti (that) salus esset. Liqueat mihi, te esse saluum. Refert meâ pluris quam tuâ.

311. Example.

*Patris magni interest, me
To (my) father it is of great importance that I should
discere.
learn.*

It-is-the-interest of all to-do right. *It-is-of* great importance to me that (160) I see you to-day. *I may* go (310) to Rome. *It is expedient* for me to write a letter. *It suits* us to do this, rather than that. *What difference* does it make? (308 *1*) *It makes* no difference. *I might have read* the letter. *It is of* great importance to all (men) to speak the truth [true (things)]. *It was of* much importance to me to hear his discourse properly. *It would have been of* importance not so much to himself as to the republic. *You may* send a messenger to Corinth. *It is of* no importance.

LESSON 35.

PREPOSITIONS WITH ACCUSATIVE.

312. *Ad*, to, at.

Adversum, } against, towards (but *erga* more commonly
Adversus, } in sense of towards).

Ante, before.

Apud, at, with, in the house of, in the writings of.

¹²³ The degree of interest or importance is expressed by the genitive adjectives of price and value (see 100), or by the neuters of adjectives.

Circa, } about, around, { *circa* and *circum*, with
Circum, } time and place; *circiter*,
Circiter, } with time.
Cis, { on this side.
Citra, }
Contra, against (of place, and hostility).
Erga, towards (of the affections).
Extra, without, beyond.
Infra, beneath.
Inter, between, among, during (*mutually* with *se*).
Intra, within (opposed to *extra*).
Juxta, beside, near.

(Before comparatives.)

The—the { *quanto—tanto*.
 { *quo—eo*.
Much (better), *multo* (melior).
How much (better), *quanto* (melior).
So much (better), *tanto* (melior).

EXERCISE 36.

Contra leges turpe est facere. Milites *inter* hostes aliquando dormient. *Intra* viginti dies consul Romam veniet. Regina *infra* oppidum ambulavit. Hostes vidi *extra* urbem. *Juxta* regem liberi dormiverunt. *Cis* montem hodie venit. Magni æstimaris *apud* bonos viros. Mortuus est *ante* Christum. *Cæsar ad* sylvam erat.

313. Example. *Circiter* meridiem veni Romam.
About noon I came to Rome.

Within ten days I shall-go *into* Africa. We will walk *between* the enemy, *on-this-side* the wood. I cannot do any-thing *against* the state. The ambassador will be *with* me to-morrow. Do nothing *against* the gods. They saw not the fires *around* (their) houses. There was war many years *between* the Samnites and the Romans. I saw the light *before* the house.

LESSON 36.

PREPOSITIONS (*continued*).

(Governing the Accusative.)

314. *Ob*, on account of, *before* (with *ocul*).
Pennis, in the power of, possession of.
Per, through, during, *by* (in adjurations).
Pone, behind (of place, but *post* is more common).
Post, after, behind.
Præter, beside, beyond, except.
Prope, near (often used with *a* or *ab*).
Propter, near, on account of, by means of.
Secundum, according to, alone, *after* (next in degree).
Supra, above.
Subter, under (very seldom with *abl*).
Trans, across, on the other side.
Versus, towards (put *after* its noun, and often joined with *ad* or *in*).
Ultra, beyond.
Usque, as far as (used only with *ab*, *ad*, *in*, *sub*; properly it is an *adv.*).
Quam maximum, as much as possible.
Quam plurimum, as many as possible.
Quam minimum, as little as possible.

(Quam before superlatives strengthens their meaning.)

EXERCISE 37.

Ob eam rem Antonius minimum temporis amisit.
 Rex magno cum exercitu *per* totam Italiam ibat.
Pennis regem omnis est potestas. *Per* Jovem deosque juro. *Præter* ceteros mihi subvenisti. Annicitia *propter* se expetenda. *Supra* caput ejus hoc recte posuerunt.
 Ægyptum *versus* cives *quam plurimi* navigaverunt.
Secundum (*after*) deos homines hominibus maxime utiles esse possunt. *Usque ad* mare mater mea venit.
Ultra montes, ut librum ejus legam, ibo.

315. Example.

Animus *per* somnum curis vacuus est.
 The mind *during* sleep from cares free is.

Eng. constr. [*The mind during sleep is free from cares.*]

I am about to see (205) the games *near* the city. During the same time, the enemy fled *behind* the wood. *On-account-of* that letter, we must write *as little-as-possible*. He values the book at a great-price *on-account-of* his mother. We shall sail *across* the sea, *towards* Corinth. He is strong *above* measure, yet he is weary of his labour. It-is-of-great-importance to us to go with the king *as-far-as* Rome.

LESSON 37.

PREPOSITIONS (*continued*).

(Governing the Ablative.)

316. *A, ab, abs*, from, by, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a \text{ before consonants.} \\ ab \text{ before vowels.} \\ abs \text{ before } t \text{ and } qu. \end{array} \right.$

Absque, without (chiefly used by comic writers).

Clam, without the knowledge of.

Coram, in the presence of.

Cum, with.

De, concerning, of, from.

E, ex, from, out of, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} e \text{ before consonants.} \\ ex \text{ before vowels and consonants.} \end{array} \right.$

De industria, on purpose.

De integro, afresh.

De facie, by sight.

Ex adverso, opposite.

Ex improviso, suddenly.

Ex tempore, off-hand.

I ought to do (this). *Me* (hoc) *facere oportet*.

Thou oughtest to do (this). *Te* (hoc) *facere oportet*:
&c. &c.

I ought to have done (this). *Me* (hoc) *facere oportuit*.

Thou oughtest to have done *Te* (hoc) *facere oportuit*.
this.

EXERCISE 38.

Nullam *abs* te epistolam accepi. Me *a* puero hoc facere oportuit. Hoc *clam* patre non facere possum.

Dicam *ex* animo, quod *de* republica sentio. Vincimus cum *a* militibus tum *a* pecuniâ. Novi cum *de* facie. Me hoc facere *de* integro oportet. Orationem *ex* tempore non legere possum.

317. Example.

Ab initio epistolam ejus legam.

From the beginning letter his I will read.

Eng. constr. [*I will read his letter from the beginning.*]

A man is not wise *from* (his) youth. I remember this *from* a boy. The queen cannot do this *without-the-knowledge-of* the king. I shall remain at Carthage day *after* (ex) day. One *of* (e) the consuls inquired *of* (de) Pompey. When I was a boy (*abl. abs.*) he heard this *from* his father *concerning* my age.

LESSON 38.

PREPOSITIONS (*continued*).

(Governing the Ablative.)

318. *Præ*, before¹, in comparison with² (often *adverbially*).
Pro, before¹ (*of place*), for² (*instead of*), agreeably to³.
Sine, without.
Tenus, as far as (follows its case, and is found sometimes with a *genitive*).

These *adverbs* also are used with an *ablative*.

Palam, openly (often without a case).

Procul, afar off (sometimes followed by *ab*).

Simul, at the same time, as soon as (sometimes followed by *cum*).

EXERCISE 39.

I *præ*¹, sequar. Omnes *præ*² illo parvi sunt. Non geri bellum oportuit *pro*³ prudentiâ. *Pro*¹ oppido hostes steterunt. Neptunum *pro*³ mari appellare solent.

Priscus non *sine* causâ numerum senatorum duplicavit.
 Cæsar hostes sylvâ *tenus* vicit. *Palam* populo rem
 dixit. Hodie it *procul* ab urbe.

319. Example.

Ejus filius sine curâ pauca discit.

His son without care few things learns.

Cæsar, while the enemy was sleeping, led a large
 army *before* the town. You may go *before*, I will
 follow *afar off*. Your daughter can go into the city
 in-the-evening *without* any fear. I did this *openly*.
 We will walk *as-soon-as* you *as-far-as* the sea. All
 men are poor *in-comparison-with* you.

LESSON 39.

PREPOSITIONS (*continued*).

(Governing Acc. and Abl.)

320. *In*, with *acc.*, into¹, towards², against³.

In, with *abl.*, in¹ (*time and place*), upon² (*of rest*),
 among³.

Sub, with *acc.*, under¹ (*motion to*; subjection, with
verbs of motion), just after², about³.

Sub, with *abl.*, under¹ (*at rest*; subjection, denoting the
state), at the very time², near³, close under⁴.

Super, with *acc.*, above¹, over², beyond³.

Super, with *abl.*, upon¹, concerning².

In diem vivere, to live for the day.

. Many *prepositions* are used as *adverbs*.

EXERCISE 40.

Librum simul posuit *in*¹ mensâ. Urbs erat *sub*¹
 imperio populi Romani. Regina *sub* umbrâ ambu-
 lavit *clam* rege. Legati *sub*¹ urbem missi sunt. Vivi-
 mus semper *sub*¹ lege. Usum est *in*² poetis. Hac
super re scribam. Sunt qui aliis noceant, ut *in*² alios
 liberales sint. Ibo *in* urbem ut fratrem videam.

321. Example.

Antonius maximo odio forebatur in
 Antony the greatest hatred bore against
 Ciceronem.
 Cicero.

We will go *into* the city at the same time. He was buried *in* the town *under* (his) house. Caesar wrote often to the senators *concerning* the war. Boys are *under* their masters, we all are *under* the king and the laws. We shall leave Rome *about* noon. The king was buried *beneath* the earth *far-from* the city.

LESSON 40.

ADVERBS AND CONJUNCTIONS.

322. Adverbs in *-e* and *-ter* enjoy comparison like adjectives:—the comparative is in *-ius*, and the superlative in *-issimè*.

323. These *conjunctions* answer to each other:—

<i>Et—et,</i>	}	both—and.
<i>Et—que,</i>		
<i>Que—que,</i>		
<i>Nec—nec,</i>	}	neither—nor.
<i>Neque—neque,</i>		
<i>Aut—aut,</i>	}	either—or.
<i>Vel—vel,</i>		
<i>Sive—sive,</i>	}	whether—or.
<i>Seu—seu,</i>		

324. “*That*” after verbs of *fearing*, mark by “*ne*,”
 “*That not*,” by “*ut*” alone will not be.

325. “*But that*” after negatives is “*quin*,”
 And after “*doubt*,” and to “*deny*.”
 And *interrogatives* expecting *yes* require
 A “*nonne*,”—while a “*num*” will *no* imply.

(Phrases followed by *quin* and the subjunctive.)

Non dubitare, not to doubt.

Non est dubium, there is no doubt.

Nihil prætermittere, to omit nothing.

Fieri non potest, it cannot be.

Negari non potest, it cannot be denied.

Facere non possum, or *non possum*, I cannot.

Temperare mihi non possum, I cannot refrain from.

Non recusare, not to refuse.

Vereor ne scribat, I fear that he will write.

Vereor ut scribat, I fear that he will not write.

Investigare, to investigate.

EXERCISE 41.

326. *Nihil tam difficile est, quin* querendo possit investigari. *Nihil* prætermisi, *quin* hoc recte facerem. Temperare mihi non possum *quin* matrem meam videam. Facere non potest *quin* sentiat. Vereor *ne* domum redeat. Vereor *ut* in urbe sepeliatur. Non est dubium, *quin* Cæsar hostes facile vincat. Non dubitavit *quin* regem videret. Nonne regina valet? Num consul venit Romam?

327. Example.

Negari non potest *quin* virtus præstantior
Be denied not it can but that virtue more excellent
sit auro.
is (than) gold.

Eng. constr. [*It cannot be denied but-that virtue is more excellent than gold.*]

He has omitted nothing that he may return to Rome. I fear that he will be driven-from the city. It cannot be denied that Romulus was more warlike than Numa. I fear, the king will be killed in the Latin war. I cannot but remain at Rome a few days. He fears that he will not return to-morrow. I do not doubt but-that he will write. Have you not written to your father? (Yes.) Have you read the book? (No.) I cannot refrain from going into the country. I will not refuse to stay.

QUESTIONS RECAPITULATORY.

(HIGHLY NECESSARY TO BE COMMITTED TO MEMORY.)

1. WHERE does the *genitive case* stand?

Before the governing noun, except when that noun is emphatic.
(13, a. b.)

2. What is the place of the *Accusative*?

In English *after* the verb, in Latin *before* the verb. (48.)

3. How should words in *opposition* be placed?

Either as *close together*, or as *far apart* as possible. (52.)

4. Of what gender are nouns in *ā* of the 1st declension?

Nouns in *ā* of the first declension are *feminine*, except the *names* and *offices of men*. (38.)

5. Of what gender are the terminations *us*, *er*, and *um* of the 2nd declension?

us and *er* are masculine; and *um* is neuter. (55.)

6. How do *adjectives* agree with the nouns they qualify?

They must be in the same *gender*, *number*, and *case*. (64.)

7. Where do *adjectives* generally stand?

Before their nouns.

8. Where do *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, and some few other monosyllables stand?

After their nouns. (67.)

9. When a *genitive* is governed by a noun having an adjective with it, where does the genitive stand?

Between the adjective and the noun. (69.)

10. What are the *genders* of the terminations of the third declension ?

There are exceptions we confess ;
But *masculines* end in *er, or, os, and o,*
And nouns *increasing* ending *es.*

But every other word in *s,*
A few in *us,* with *io, go, and do,*
And *x,* are *femalé* if you please.

But *ar, ur, us,* and other vowels than *o ;*
With *c, l, n,* and *t,* are *neuter* though. (74.)

11. What do adjectives *without* a noun agree with ?

If *masculine* they agree with *man* understood ; if *feminine* they agree with *woman* understood ; and if *neuter* they agree with *thing* understood. (81.)

12. Of what gender are the nouns in *us* and *u* of the fourth declension ?

Those in *us* are mostly *masculine ;* those in *u* are *neuter.* (88, 89.)

13. How may the infinitive mood of a verb be used ?

As a substantive of the *nominative* or *accusative* case, *neuter ;* and may have adjectives to agree with them in the *neuter.* (95.)

14. When a preposition governs a *substantive* having an adjective with it, where do you place the *preposition* ?

Between the *adjective* and the *substantive.* (99.)

15. How do adjectives form their comparative degree ?

By adding to the root *ior* for masculine and feminine, and *ius* for the *neuter.* (103.)

16. How do adjectives form the *superlative* degree ?

By adding to the root *-issimus, a, um.* (104.)

17. How is *than* expressed after the comparative ?

(a) *Than* is omitted when the person or thing compared *possesses* a portion of the same quality, and the noun following is to be in the *ablative.* (110, a.)

(b) *Than* is expressed by *quam,* and the persons or things compared are in *like* cases when they do *not possess* any portion of the quality. (110, b.)

18. In forming the *perfect* of the third conjugation, how are the *p* sounds and *k* sounds affected ?

In adding *s* to form the *perfect* tenses the *p* sounds (*b* and *p*) become *p ;* and the *k* sounds (*c, g, cl, qu, or k*) with *s* coalesce into *x.* (120, b. c.)

19. When are *sui* and *suus* used?

When they refer to the *nominative* of the verb. (134.)

20. What do adjectives in the *neuter* gender without a substantive, and expressing *part* of any quantity, require?

The noun following in the *genitive*. (137.)

21. Is the *nominative* of pronouns always expressed?

Only when *emphasis* is required. (142, b.)

22. How are *not* and *nor* expressed with *imperatives*?

To all *imperatives* allot

A "*ne*" whenever there's a "*not*."

Whenever "*nor*" occurs, employ

A "*neque*," to be right, my boy.—(147.)

23. How is point of *time*, *when*, expressed?

In the *ablative* without a preposition. (150.)

24. How is *how long* expressed?

In the *accusative* without a preposition. (150.)

25. In what case are the names of *towns* and the place *where* put?

If of the first or second declension, and singular, in the *genitive* :—
plurals and other declensions, in the *ablative*. (151, a. b.)

26. What case follows verbs of *motion*?

The *accusative* : towns and small islands omit the preposition; but before countries put *in* or *ad*. (151. c.)

27. In what case is the place *from* or *whence*?

In the *ablative*. (152.)

28. With what must the *relative* agree?

With its *antecedent* in *gender*, *number*, and *person*. (153.)

29. How is the *case* of the relative governed?

Generally by some word in its own sentence (159); and when no *nominative* comes between the relative and the verb, the *relative* is *nominative* to the verb. (Note 30.)

30. What case do adjectives expressing the various affections of the mind govern?

The *genitive*. (Note 31.)

31. What is the particular sequence of tenses in the subjunctive mood?

The *present* subjunctive follows the *present* and *future* indicative; the *imperfect* subjunctive follows the *past tenses* indicative. (163.)

32. What do *unus* and *solus* with *qui* require?

Unus and *solus* joined with *qui*,
Require *subjunctive*, by-the-by. (Note 37.)

33. What does *multus* followed by another adjective require?

Et, though not so in English. (Note 39.)

34. After parts of the verb *to be*, how are the words *part*, *duty*, *mark*, *business*, *character*, &c. expressed?

They are *omitted* in Latin, and the noun following is in the genitive. (175.)

35. How is *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, *our*, *your*, then expressed after *duty*, *mark*, *business*, &c.?

By the *neuter gender nominative* of the adjective pronouns. (183.)

36. In what case do adjectives express the *cost*, *price*, or *value*?

In the *genitive*. (189, a.)

37. In what case do substantives express the *cost*, *price*, or *value*?

In the *ablative*. (189, b.)

38. What follows *know*, *think*, *feel*, *hear*, *say*, and *see*?

After *know*, *think*, *feel*, *hear*, *say*, and *see*,
An *accusative* with its *infinitive* must be;
The English "*that*" beyond a doubt,
You must, in Latin, then *leave out*. (191.)

39. Do participles admit of *comparison*?

Only when they do not relate to *time*, and they then also take a *genitive case*. (204.)

40. How is length of time before the present moment expressed?

By *abhinc* with the *accusative* for *duration* of time, and with *ablativ* for *point* of time. (208, a.)

41. When a noun and participle are independent of any other word in a sentence, in what case are they put?

In the *ablative*; which is called the *ablative absolute*. (216.)

42. What does "*to*" after a verb of *motion* denote?

The noun following to be in the *accusative case*. (151.)

43. When does the participle in *-dus* imply *duty* or *necessity*?

When declined with the verb *sum*. (221.)

44. How is *duty* or *necessity* expressed?

By the participle in *-dus* agreeing with the subject; or in the neuter gender with the subject in the *dative*. (222.)

45. Go through a *declension* with the participle in *-dus* in *agreement*. (See 219.)46. Go through a *tense* with the participle in *-dus* in the *neuter*, with the subject in the *dative*. (See 222.)47. How is difference of *time* expressed when using the *part. in -dus*?

By the tenses of *sum*. (226.)

48. How is *cum* (with) placed with the personal pronouns and with monosyllables?

Joined to the end as one word, as *meum*, *tecum*, &c. (Note 66.)

49. What may the gerunds be considered?

As the *genitive*, *dative*, *ablative*, and *accusative* cases neuter of the *part. in -dus*. (229.)

50. When are the *gerunds* and *part. in -dus* convertible?

When the verb is *transitive*. (230.)

51. Decline the *gerunds* with the aid of the *infinitive* as a noun. (See 231.)52. How is a *purpose* expressed in Latin?

Five different ways.

1st. By *ut* with the subjunctive. (160.)

2nd. By the *supine* in *um*. (197.)

3rd. By the *future* in *-rus*. (206.)

4th. By *causa* or *gratia*, with a *gerund* in *di*. (233.)

5th. By a *gerund* in *dum* governed by *ad*. (Note 67.)

53. What is the *nominative* case to a *passive* verb?

That which is the *accusative* if it were *active*, and no other (Note 70), and the *nominative* is then put into the *ablative*.

54. If an *active* verb governs any other case than the *accusative*, how is it made *passive*?

It then must take an *impersonal* form in the *passive*. (Note 70.)

55. In what case is the *agent* of an *active* verb expressed in the *passive*?

In the *ablative*: *living beings* requiring the preposition *a* or *ab*. (237.)

56. In what case is the *instrument* of an action expressed?

In the *ablative* without a *preposition*. (238.)

57. In what case is the *manner* of an action expressed?

In the *ablative*, with the *preposition cum*. (239.)

58. When an *adjective* is joined with a noun governed by a *preposition*, what is the place of the *preposition*?

Between the *adjective* and the *noun*. (239, b.)

59. When two or more nouns are coupled by *and*, what do they require?

A verb *plural*. (Note 73.)

60. When several words are joined by *and*, is the conjunction *et* repeated?

Et may be omitted entirely, or it must be repeated to all. (Note 78.)

61. How is a *purpose* expressed after verbs of *commanding, advising, asking, striving*?

In *ut* and a *subjunctive*

True correctness lies

To note a *purpose* after *ask, command,*

To *strive* and to *advise*.

62. What *mood* usually follows *impersonal* forms?

The *accusative* and *infinitive*, which may be considered as its *subject*.

63. What are the exceptions?

These *impersonals*:

Restat, accidit, and fit,

With very often *sequitur*;

Contingit, reliquum est, and evenit,

Which ever will an *ut* prefer.

64. In what case are the adjectives of *price* and *value* sometimes put?

In the *ablative*, to agree with *pretio* understood. (Note * p. 100.)

65. What cases do *deponent* verbs govern?

With to *forget—to remember—pity—place,*

The *noun* that follows in the *genitive* case;

But to *enjoy, discharge, and also use,*

You must an *ablative* introduce. (263.)

66. What case does *sum* require?

Esse, when it means *to have*, will place
The person in the *dative* case;
The compounds too of *sum* a *dative* find,
Excepting *possum*, bear in mind. (269.)

67. When *will* and *would* imply mere *futurity*,
how are they expressed?

By a tense of the following verb. (277.)

68. When they imply *inclination*, or when the sen-
tence is *absolute* and *independent*, how are they ex-
pressed?

By a tense of *volo*, with the verb following in the *infinitive*.
(277, b.)

69. When *can* and *could* are in sentences *absolute*
and *independent*, how are they expressed?

By a tense of *possum* with the following verb in the *infinitive*.
(278.)

70. How is "*that—not*" with a *purpose* expressed?

"*That—not*" with a *purpose* must not be:
"*Ut*" with a negative, but only "*ne*." (279.)

71. How are "*so*" and "*such*" translated when
preceding "*that*?"

"*So*" and "*such*" preceding "*that*,"
A *consequence* relate;
By *ut* with the *subjunctive* then
This *consequence* translate. (287.)

72. How are *negatives* with a *consequence* expressed?

When *negatives* attend a *consequence*,
"*That*" still express by "*ut*;"
For "*not*," or English *negative*, you then
A Latin *negative* must put. (288.)

73. How are *negatives* with a *purpose* expressed?

When *negatives* attend a *purpose*,
Remember, "*ut*" will be,
With the negative omitted,
Converted into "*ne*." (289.)

74. What is the *quantity* of the *final syllables* of
words?

When *b, l, ŷs, t, r, d, us*, conclude a word,
Short (˘) must the ending be inferred;
But *ŏs, c, ū, n, ŷ,* with *ās* and *ēs*,
Long (ˉ) are reckoned, if you please. (Note 121.)

75. What is the quantity of the middle syllables?

A *vowel* before *two* consonants is *long*,
A rule remember—with this other:—
That *every vowel* is reckoned *short*,
Whenever followed by another. (Note 121.)

76. What cases do *impersonals* require?

Miseret, and these *impersonals* require,
Beginning *pi-*; *pu-*; *pa-*; and *ta-*;
The person feeling in the *accusative*,
And in the *genitive* the cause to be. (302.)
The rest will take a *dative* case;
An *accusative* the *transitives*;
While *interest* and *referi*, *ablatives* in *-d*,
But *interest* often *genitives*. (306.)

77. Conjugate “*may read*,” and “*might read*,” with
licet. (See 310.)

78. How is the degree of *interest* or *importance*
expressed with *interest* and *referi*?

By the *genitive* adjectives of *price* and *value* (see 190), or by the
neuters of adjectives.

79. Repeat the *prepositions* governing the *accusa-*
tive. (See 312. 314.)

80. Repeat the *prepositions* governing the *ablative*;
(See 316. 318.)

81. Repeat the *prepositions* governing the *accusative*
and *ablative*. (See 320.)

82. How are “*that*” and “*that not*” after verbs of
fearing expressed?

“*That*” after verbs of *fearing* mark by “*ne*,”
“*That not*,” by “*ut*” alone, will noted be. (324.)

83. How is “*but that*” expressed after *negative*
and verbs of *doubting* and *denying*?

“*But that*,” after negatives is “*quin*,”
And after “*doubt*,” and to “*deny*,”
And *interrogatives* expecting *yes* require
A “*nonne*,”—while a “*num*” will *no* imply. (325.)

INDEX I.

LATIN.

A.

A, *ab*, *abs*, *prep.*, *from, by* (with *abl.*); *a* before consonants, *ab* before vowels, *abs* before *t* and *qu*.

abunde, *adv.*, *plenty*.

accidit, *impers. verb.*, *it happens*.

accipere-cepi-ptum, *to receive*.

ad, *prep.*, *to, at* (with *acc.*).

adhibere-ui-lum, *to show, exhibit*.

adire-ivi, *to go to, approach*.

administrare, *to manage*.

admirare, *to admire*.

adolescens-ntis, *m. a young man*.

adolescentia-æ, *f. youth*.

adversum } *prep.*, *against* (with
adversus } *acc.*).

ædificare, *to build*.

ægre, *adv.*, *with difficulty*.

æstimare, *to value, reckon, esteem*.

ætas-atls, *f. age*.

Æfrica-æ, *f. Africa*.

agere, *egi*, *actum*, *to do*.

alere-ui-lum, *to nourish, improve*.

aliquantus-a-um, *very much*.

aliquis-quæ-quid, *or quod*, *one, any, some, some one*.

alius, alius, aliud, *one, another*.

alius — alius, *one — another*.

alter-tera-terum, *another*.

alter — alter, *one — the other*.

amabilis-e, *adj.*, *amiable*.

amare-avi-atum, *to love*.

ambulare, *to walk*.

amicitia-æ, *f. friendship*.

amicus-i, *a friend*.

amicus-a-um, *adj.*, *friendly*.

amittere-isi-issum, *to lose*.

anima-æ, *f. the soul*.

animus-i, *m. the mind* (sentiments and passions).

annus-i, *m. a year*.

ante, *prep.*, *before* (with *acc.*).

Antonius-i, *m. Anthony*, *a noble Roman*.

apparere-ui-lum, *to appear, be visible*.

apud, *prep.*, *at, with, in the house of* (with *acc.*).

argentum-i, *n. silver*.

argenteus-a-um, *adj.*, *of silver*.

arma-orum, *pl. n. arms*.

aspicere-exi-ectum, *to behold, see*.

Athenæ-arum, *pl. Athens*.

auctoritas-ntis, *f. authority*.

audacia-æ, *f. boldness*.

audire-ivi-lum, *to hear*.

augere-uxi-etum, *to increase*.

aureus-a-um, *adj.*, *golden*.

aurum-i, *n. gold*.

autem, *conj.*, *but* (169).

auxilium-i, *n. assistance*.

B.

beatus-a-um, *adj.*, *happy*.

bellum-i, *n. war*.

bene, *adv.*, *well*.

beneficium, *n.* kindness.
bonus-a-um, *adj.*, good.
brevis-e, *adj.*, short, brief.
Britannus-i, *m.* a Briton.

C.

Cæsar-æris, *m.* Cæsar.
cæsus-a-um, *pt.*, killed, slain.
Gaius-i, *m.* a Roman name.
canis-is, *a dog*.
caro, carnis, *flesh*.
Carthago-ginis, *Carthage*.
carus-a-um, *dear, precious*.
catēna-æ, *f. a chain*.
causa-æ, *f. a cause*.
cedere, cessi, cessum, *to yield up*
(note 56).
celeritas-atris, *f. celerity, activity*.
cernere, crevi, cretum, *to perceive*.
certiorem facere, *to inform*.
charta-æ, *f. paper*.
Christus-i, *m. Christ*.
Cicero-ōnis, *m. Cicero*.
circa }
circum } *prep., about (with acc.)*.
circiter }
circus-i, *m. a circus*.
cis, citra, *prep., on this side (with*
acc.).
civis-is, *a citizen*.
Cleopatra-æ, *Cleopatra, a queen of*
Egypt.
coelum-i, *heaven*.
cogitare, *to think*.
collocare, *to place*.
comitas-ātis, *f. politeness, courteous-*
ness.
commeatus-ūs, *provisions*.
committere prælium, *to fight, to en-*
gage (literally, to commence a
battle).
commodus-s-um, *adj., convenient*.
(commoda-orum, *pl. n. things con-*
venient, necessary.)
concedere, cessi, cessum, *to grant*
(note 56).
conditio-onis, *f. condition*.
confare, *to bring, make, blow to-*
gether.

conglutinatio-onis, *f. cement*.
conjunctio-onis, *f. union*.
conscientia-æ, *f. conscience*.
conservare, *to preserve, save*.
consillium-i, *counsel, design*.
constat, *it is an allowed fact*.
consul-lis, *m. consul*.
contingit, *imp., it happens*.
convenit, *imp., it suits, it is fitting*.
Corinthus-i, *Corinth*.
corōna-æ, *f. a crown*.
corpus-ūris, *n. a body*.
cras, *adv., to-morrow*.
crudeliter, *adv., cruelly*.
cum, *prep., with (with abl.)*.
cum — tum, *as well — as*.
cunctatio-ōnis, *f. delay*.
cura-æ, *f. care*.
Curio-ōnis, *m. a Roman (199)*.
currus-ūs, *m. a chariot*.

D.

dare, dedi, datum, *to give*.
— pœnas, *to make atonement,*
give satisfaction (with the crime
in the genitive).
Davus-i, *m. a man's name in Te-*
rence.
de, *prep., of, concerning (with abl.)*.
— facie, *by sight*.
— improviso, *unawares*.
— industriâ, *on purpose*.
— integro, *afresh*.
debere-ui-ŭtum, *to owe*.
debet, *imp., it ought*.
decem, *indecl., ten*.
decemviri-ōrum, *pl., the decemvirs*
(ten Roman magistrates).
decet, *imp., it becomes*.
dedecet, *imp., it misbecomes*.
de-esse, *to be wanting, fail*.
defendere-di-nsum, *to defend*.
delectare, *to delight*.
delectat, *imp., it delights*.
delere-evi-etum, *to blot out, destroy*.
describere-psi-ptum, *to describe,*
divide, arrange.
Deus-i, *m. God*.
dicere, dixi, dictum, *to say, tell*.

dictator-ōris, *m. a dictator.*
 dies-ei, *m. and f. a day.*
 difficilis-e, *adj., difficult.*
 difficultas-atīs, *f. difficulty.*
 dignus-a-um, *adj., worthy.*
 diligentia-æ, *f. diligence.*
 dimicare, *to fight.*
 dimicatio-ōnis, *f. combat, dispute.*
 dimittēre-misi-issum, *to dismiss.*
 discēre, didici, *to learn.*
 divellēre-elli, and -ulsi-ulsum, *to tear asunder.*
 divitiæ-arum, *f. riches.*
 docēre-ui-ctum, *to teach.*
 Dolabella-æ, *a person's name.*
 dolēre-ui-itum, *to grieve.*
 dolor-ōris, *m. pain.*
 dominus-i, *m. a lord, a master (who owns).*
 domus-i, and -ūs, *f. a house, home.*
 donare, *to present.*
 dormire-ivi, *to sleep.*
 ducēre, duxi-ctum, *to lead.*
 ——— uxorem, *to marry (applied to a man).*
 dulcis-e, *adj., sweet.*
 duplicare, *to double.*
 dux, ducis, *m. a leader, general.*

E.

e } *prep., from, out of (with abl.).*
 ex }
 ebrietas-ātis, *f. drunkenness.*
 edēre, edi (*irr.*), *to eat.*
 ego, *pron., I (gen. mei, dat. mihi; acc. me; abl. me).*
 Egyptus-i, *Egypt.*
 eligēre-egi-ectum, *to choose.*
 emēre, emi, emtum, and emptum, *to buy.*
 epistola-æ, *f. a letter.*
 eques-ītis, *m. a knight, a horseman.*
 equus-i, *m. a horse.*
 erat (part of *sum*), *was.*
 error-oris, *m. error.*
 est (part of *sum*), *is.*
 est sui juris, *he is his own master.*
 et, *conj., and (34).*
 et — et, *both — and.*

etiam, *conj., also.*
 etiam atque etiam, *again and again.*
 Europa-æ, *f. Europe.*
 evenit, *imp., it happens.*
 ex, *prep., out of, from (with abl.).*
 — adverso, *opposite.*
 — improviso, *suddenly, unawares.*
 — tempore, *off hand.*
 excellentissime, *adv. sup., most excellently.*
 exceptus-a-um, *pt., excepted.*
 excruciare, *to torture.*
 excusare, *to excuse.*
 exercitus-ūs, *m. an army.*
 exire-ivi-itum, *to go out, depart.*
 exordium-i, *a beginning.*
 expedit, *imp., it is expedient.*
 expellēre-ulsi-ulsum, *to drive out, expel.*
 experiri, expertus, *to try.*
 expetēre-ivi-itum, *to seek for.*
 extremus-a-um, *adj., last, end of.*

F.

facēre, feci, factum, *to make, do, compose.*
 facies-ei, *f. a face.*
 facile, *adv., easily.*
 facilis, *adj., easy.*
 factus-a-um, *pt. (from facio), done, made.*
 facultas-atīs, *f. opportunity, power.*
 fatēri, *to confess.*
 fera-æ, *f. a wild-beast.*
 fero-tuli-latum, *irr., to bear, carry.*
 feror, ferri, *to be borne.*
 ferox-ōcis, *adj., warlike, bold.*
 ferrum-i, *iron.*
 festinare, *to hasten.*
 fides-ei, *f. faith.*
 fieri, factus (*fio*), *irr., to be made, done.*
 filia-æ, *f. a daughter.*
 filius-i, *m. a son.*
 finis-is, *m. an end, limit.*
 fletus-ūs, *m. weeping.*
 fœdus-a-um, *adj., disgraceful.*
 fœmina-æ, *f. a woman.*
 frater-tris, *m. a brother.*

frigidus-a-um, *adj.*, cold.
 frui, fructus & fruitus, *to enjoy*.
 frumentum-i, *corn*.
 fugere, fugi-*itum*, *to fly, avoid*.
 fuit (*perf. of sum*), *was, has been*.
 fulgere, fulsi, *to shine*.
 fundamentum-i, *foundation*.
 fundere, fudi, fusum, *to pour*.
 fungi, functus, *to discharge*.

G.

genius-i, *m. a genius*.
 genus-neris, *n. a race, family*.
 gerere, gessi-*stum*, *to carry on*.
 glacies-ei, *f. ice*.
 gladius-i, *m. a sword*.
 gloria-æ, *f. glory*.
 Græcia-æ, *f. Græce*.
 gravis-e, *adj.*, grievous, heavy.
 gubernare, *to govern*.

H.

habere-ul-*itum*, *to have*.
 herba-æ, *f. a herb*.
 herus-i, *m. a master (of slaves)*.
 hic, hæc, hoc, *pron.*, *this, the former*.
 hodie, *adv.*, *to-day*.
 homo-mnis, *a man or woman*,
mankind in general.
 honestas-utis, *f. honesty*.
 honor-oris, *m. honour*.
 hora-æ, *f. an hour*.
 hostis-is, *m. an enemy*.
 humanitas-utis, *f. classical learning*.
 humanus-a-um, *adj.*, *human, polite*,
learned.
 hyems-is, *f. winter*.

I.

idem, eadem, idem, *pr.*, *the same*
 (132).
 idem — qui, *the same — as*.
 idem — idem, *as well — as*.
 id ætatis, *at that age* (184).
 id temporis, *at that time* (184).

idoneus-a-um, *adj.*, *fit*.
 ignarus-a-um, *adj.*, *ignorant*.
 ignavus-a-um, *adj.*, *idle*.
 ignis-is, *m. fire*.
 ignorantia-æ, *f. ignorance*.
 ille, illa, illud, *pr.*, *he, she, it, the*
latter (as opposed to hic).
 immortalis-e, *adj.*, *immortal*.
 impedimenta-orum, *pl.*, *baggage*.
 imperare, *to command (dat.)*.
 imperator-oris, *m. a commander*,
ruler.
 imperium-i, *command*.
 impertire-ivi, *to impart, show*.
 impetrare, *to effect, bring to pass*.
 implere-evi-*etum*, *to fill*.
 improbus-a-um, *adj.*, *wicked*.
 impōnere-osui-*itum*, *to put, im-*
pose.
 imus-a-um, *adj.*, *lowest, bottom of*.
 in, *prep.*, *in* (*denoting motion, with*
acc.; *denoting rest, with abl.*).
 industria-æ, *f. industry*.
 ineptia-æ, *f. folly, absurdity*.
 ingenium-i, *talent, skill*.
 innocens-ntis, *adj.*, *innocent*.
 insania-æ, *f. madness*.
 insipiens-ntis, *adj.*, *foolish*.
 intelligere-lexi-*ctum*, *to under-*
stand.
 inter, *prep.*, *between, during (with*
acc.).
 interesse (intersum), *to be of im-*
portance.
 interest, *imp.*, *it concerns, is of im-*
portance, is important.
 interficere-feci-*ctum*, *to kill*.
 interior-oris, *adj.*, *more inward, in-*
terior of.
 intimus-a-um, *adj.*, *most inward*,
inside of.
 inveteratus-a-um, *adj.*, *old, lasted*
a long time.
 invidia-æ, *f. envy*.
 invitare, *to invite*.
 ire, ivi, *itum*, *to go*.
 is, ea, id, *pr.*, *he, she, it*.
 iste-ta-tud, *pr.*, *that*.
 ita, *conj.*, *so*.
 Italia-æ, *f. Italy*.
 iter, itinēris, *n. a journey*.

J.

jam, *conj.*, now, at this time.
 jocus-ī, *m.*, a joke, jesting.
 jubāre, *jusi-sum*, to order.
 jucundus-a-um, *adj.*, pleasant.
 judex-ici, *m.*, a judge.
 judicare, to judge.
 Jupiter, Jovis, *m.*, Jupiter, the chief
 of the gods.
 jurare, to swear.
 justitia-æ, *f.*, justice.
 juvenis-is, *m.*, youth, young man.
 juvenus-ūlis, *f.*, youth.

L.

labor-ōris, *m.*, labour, task.
 lac, lactis, *n.*, milk.
 lacerāre-ivi-utum, to provoke, excite.
 lachryma-æ, *f.*, a tear.
 lapis-idi, *m.*, a stone.
 Latinus-a-um, *adj.*, Latin.
 laudare, to praise.
 laus, laudi, *f.*, praise.
 legatus-i, *m.*, an ambassador.
 legere-epi-ctum, to read.
 lenire-iri, and -ii-utum, to milligate,
 soften.
 lenis-e, *adj.*, gentle.
 levare, to lighten.
 lex, legis, a law.
 liber-utri, *m.*, a book.
 liberare, to set free.
 liberi-ōrum, *pl. m.*, children.
 libertas-ūtis, *f.*, liberty.
 libet, *imp.*, it pleases.
 libra-æ, *f.*, a pound.
 licet, *imp.*, it is lawful, it is per-
 mitted.
 liquet, *imp.*, it is clear.
 literæ-ārum, *pl.*, a letter, epistle;
 the sciences, knowledge.
 luctus-ūs, *m.*, grief.
 ludus-i, *m.*, a game.
 lux, lucis, *f.*, light.

M.

maculare, to stain.
 magis, *adv.*, more.

magis — quam, more — than,
 rather — than.
 magister-tri, *m.*, a master (who
 teaches).
 magistratus-ūs, *m.*, a magistrate.
 magni, at much, at a great price.
 magnus-a-um, *adj.*, great, large.
 major-ōris (comp. of magnus),
 greater.
 male, *adv.*, badly.
 malo-ui, malle, *irr.*, to be more will-
 ing, to have rather.
 malus-a-um, *bad*, evil.
 manēre-nsi-sum, to remain, to
 stay.
 manus-ūs, *f.*, a hand.
 mare-is, *n.*, the sea.
 mater-tris, *f.*, a mother.
 materies-ci, *f.*, material.
 maximi, at very much.
 maximus-a-um, *adj.*, greatest, oldest.
 medius-a-um, *adj.*, middle, middle
 of.
 mel, mellis, *n.*, honey.
 melior-ōris, *adj.* (comp. of bonus),
 better.
 meminisse (defective verb), to re-
 member.
 memor-ris, *adj.*, mindful.
 mens-ntis, *f.*, mind (intellect).
 mensis-is, *m.*, a month.
 merum-i, wine.
 metus-ūs, *m.*, fear.
 meus-a-um, *pr.*, my, mine.
 miles-itis, *m.*, a soldier.
 minimi, at the least price, very
 little.
 minimus-a-um, *adj.* (sup. of par-
 vus), the least.
 minor-ōris, *adj.* (comp. of parvus),
 less.
 minoris, at less.
 mirus-a-um, *adj.*, wonderful.
 miser-ēra-erum, *adj.*, miserable.
 miserēri, miseritūs, & misertus, to
 pity.
 miserescit } *imp.*, it pities.
 miseret }
 miseretur }
 mittere, misi, missum, to send.
 moestitia-æ, *f.*, sadness, grief.

monēre-ul-ītum, *to advise.*
 mons-ntis, *a mountain.*
 monstrare, *to show.*
 mora-æ, *f. delay.*
 mors-rtis, *f. death.*
 movēre, movi, motum, *to move.*
 multus-a-um, *adj., much, many.*
 mundus-i, *m. the world.*
 munus-ēris, *n. a gift, duty, office.*
 musa-æ, *f. a song.*

N.

natio-ōnis, *f. a nation.*
 natus-a-um, *pt., born, old* (time following, in acc. 217).
 navigare, *to sail.*
 navis-is, *m. a ship.*
 ne, *conj., not* (with imperatives and subjunctives), *lest.*
 nec — nec, *neither — nor.*
 negare, *to deny.*
 negligens-ntis, *adj., negligent.*
 nemo-īnis, *no one.*
 Neptunus-i, *Neptune, god of the sea.*
 neque, *conj., neither.*
 neque — neque, *neither — nor.*
 nescire-īvi-īi-ītum, *not to know, to be ignorant of.*
 nihil, *indecl., nothing.*
 nihili (gen. of nihilum), *at nothing.*
 nimio, *at too much.*
 nimius-a-um, *adj., too much.*
 niti, nīsus, & nixus, *to endeavour.*
 nocēre, nocui, *to hurt* (dat.).
 nolo, nolui, nolle, irr., *to be unwilling.*
 non, *adv., not.*
 non modo — sed etiam, *not only — but also.*
 noscēre, novi, *to know* (199).
 noster-tra-trum, *pr., our, ours.*
 novus-a-um, *adj., new.*
 nubēre-psi-ptum, *to marry* (dat., applied to a woman).
 nubes-is, *m. a cloud.*
 nullus-a-um, *adj., none, no one.*
 numerus-i, *m. a number.*
 nunc, *conj., now, at this time.*

nuncius-i, *m. a messenger.*
 nunquam, *adv., never.*
 nutrire-īvi-ītum, *to nourish.*

O.

ob, *prep., for, because of* (with abl.).
 oblectare, *to delight.*
 oblivisci, oblitus, *to forget.*
 obstupēre-tupui (fr. obstupesco), *to be astonished.*
 omnis-e, *adj., all.*
 oppidum-i, *n. a town.*
 optimus-a-um, *ad. (sup. of bonus), best.*
 opus-ēris, *n. a work.*
 oratio-ōnis, *language, speech.*
 ornare, *to adorn.*

P.

pabulum-i, *food.*
 parare, *to procure, prepare.*
 parens-ntis, *a parent.*
 parēre-ul, *to obey* (dat.)
 pars-rtis, *f. a part.*
 parum, *adv., a little* (note 22).
 parvi, *at a little price.*
 parvus-a-um, *adj., little, small.*
 pater-tris, *m. a father.*
 patria-æ, *f. a country.*
 pauci-æ-a, *pl. adj., few.*
 paucis his diebus, *a few days ago.*
 paululum, *adj. neut., a little* (note 22).
 pauper-eris, *adj., poor.*
 pax, pacis, *f. peace.*
 peccare, *to sin.*
 peccatum-i, *a crime, sin.*
 pecunia-æ, *f. money.*
 percontator-ōris, *m. an inquisitive person.*
 perferre-tuli-latum, irr., *to endure.*
 perfrui-fructus, *to enjoy thoroughly.*
 periculum-i, *danger.*
 permagni, *at very much.*
 permulti-æ-a, *adj. pl., very many.*
 perseverare, *to persevere.*

perspicere-pei-pectum, *to behold, see.*

pessimus-a-um, *adj. (sup. of malus), the worst.*

petens-ntis, *pl., seeking.*

petere-ivi-il-itum, *to seek.*

philosophia-æ, *f. philosophy.*

piget, *imp., it grieves.*

Plato-onis, *m. Plato.*

plebs-bis, *common people.*

plurimi, *at the most, at very much.*

plurimus-a-um, *adj. (sup. multus), most.*

pluris, *at more, of more value.*

plus-uris, *adj., more.*

poculum-l, *a cup.*

Pœni-orum, *pl., the Carthaginians.*

pœnitet, *imp., it repents.*

poeta-æ, *a poet.*

polire, *ivi, to polish.*

ponere, posui-itum, *to put, place.*

populus-i, *m. the people.*

portare, *to carry, bear.*

posse, *irr., to be able (267).*

postea, *adv., afterwards. after.*

posterus-a-um, *adj., next.*

potestas-utis, *f. power.*

potiri, potitus, *to be in possession of.*

præbere-ui, *to afford, offer, exhibit.*

præceptor-oris, *m. teacher.*

præmium-l, *reward.*

præscribere-psi-ptum, *to direct, prescribe (dat.).*

præsens-ntis, *adj., present.*

præstans-ntis, *adj., excellent.*

præterita-orum, *pl., things past.*

præcepta-urum, *pl., precepts.*

pretium-i, *price, sum of money.*

primus-a-um, *adj., first, beginning of.*

prius-quam, *before—that; sooner than.*

proavus-i, *m. an ancestor.*

proferre-tuli-latum, *to extend.*

proficere-feci-sectum, *to advance, accomplish.*

promptus-a-um, *adj., ready.*

prudentia-æ, *f. prudence.*

pudet, *imp., it shames.*

puella-æ, *f. a girl.*

puer-i, *m. a boy.*

pugna-æ, *f. a battle.*

pulcher-chra-chrum, *adj., fair, beautiful.*

punire-ivi, *to punish.*

putare, *to think.*

Q.

querere-sivi-situm, *to seek.*

qualis-e, *adv., of what kind, manner, what?*

— (answering to talis), *as.*

quam, *conj., than, that, how.*

— (answering to tam), *as.*

— (answering to prius or magis), *than, that.*

quam maximi, *as great as possible.*

— minimi, *as little as possible.*

— plurimi, *as many as possible.*

quanti, *at how much.*

quanto—tanto, *the—the (before comparatives).*

quantus-a-um, *adv. how much, how great, how many, as great as, such as.*

— (answering to tantus), *as.*

que, *conj., and.*

qui, quæ, quod, *rel. pr., who, which, that (157).*

— (answering to idem), *as.*

quid, *what (neut. of qui).*

— novi? *what news?*

Quirites-itum, *pl., a name given to the Romans.*

quis, quæ, quid, or quod (*interrog.*), *who, which.*

quivis, quævis, quodvis, *any one.*

quo—eo (*before comparatives*), *the—the.*

quot, *ad. pr., how many, as many as.*

— (answering to tot), *as.*

quum, or cum, *when.*

quum—tum, *when—then.*

R.

recens-ntis, *adj., fresh.*

rectè, *adv., properly.*

rector-ōris, *m. a ruler.*
 redire-ivi-itum, *to return.*
 refert, *imp., it concerns, is important, is of importance.*
 regina, *æ, f. the queen.*
 regnum, *l, a kingdom.*
 reliquus, *n, um, adv., remaining.*
rest of.
 res, *rei, f. a matter, affair, thing.*
 — adversæ, *pl., adversity.*
 — secundæ, *pl., prosperity.*
 respublica-æ, *f. the republic, state, commonwealth (227).*
 respondere-ndi-nsum, *to answer.*
 revocare, *to recall.*
 rex, *regis, m. a king.*
 ridiculus-a-um, *ridiculous.*
 rixari, *to scold, quarrel.*
 rogare, *to ask for, beg.*
 Roma-æ, *f. Rome.*
 Romanus-a-um, *adj., Roman.*
 Romulus-i, *m. Romulus.*
 rumpere-rupi-ptum, *to break.*
 rus, *ruris, n. the country.*

S.

sæpe, *adv., often.*
 salvus-a-um, *adj. safe.*
 salutare, *to salute.*
 Samnis-nitis, *a Samnite.*
 sanguis-inis, *m. blood.*
 sapiens-ntis, *adj., wise.*
 sapientia-æ, *f. wisdom.*
 satis, *adv., enough.*
 scientia-æ, *f. knowledge, science.*
 scire, scivi, or il-itum, *to know (109).*
 Scipio-ōnis, *m. Scipio.*
 scribere-psi-ptum, *to write.*
 se, *him, her, them (acc. or abl. of sui).*
 sed, *conj., but (82. 109).*
 semper, *adv., always.*
 senator-ōris, *m. a senator.*
 senectus-utis, *f. old age.*
 sententia-æ, *f. an opinion.*
 sentire, sensi-nsum, *to know, feel, perceive.*
 sepelire-ivi-ultum, *to bury.*

septem, *indecl., seven.*
 serere, sevi, satum, *to sow.*
 servus-i, *m. a slave.*
 severitas-utis, *f. severity.*
 si, *conj., if, so.*
 sic, *conj., so.*
 sine, *prep., without (with abl.).*
 societas-utis, *f. society.*
 Socrates-is, *m. Socrates.*
 sol, solis, *m. the sun.*
 solere, solitus, *to be accustomed.*
 spectare, *to behold, see.*
 sperare, *to hope.*
 spernere, spre-i, spretum, *to despise.*
 spes, spei, *f. hope.*
 stare, steti, statum, *to stand, cost.*
 statuere-ni-utum, *to appoint, determine.*
 studiosus-a-um, *studious, very fond.*
 studium-i, *n. study.*
 stultitia-æ, *f. folly.*
 subvenire-veni-ntum, *to help (dat.).*
 sui, *pr., of himself, herself, themselves, &c. (referring to the nom. of the verb.)*
 sum, fui, esse, *to be, am (67).*
 summus-a-um, *adj., highest, top of.*
 superare, *to overcome.*
 superbe, *adv., proudly.*
 suscipere-cepi-ptum, *to undertake.*
 suspicio-ōnis, *f. suspicion.*
 sustinere-ui-ntum, *to sustain, support.*
 suus-a-um, *his, hers, its (when referring to the nom. of the verb, 82).*
 sylva-æ, *f. a wood.*
 Syracusa-æ, *f. Syracuse.*

T.

taedet, *imp., it wearies.*
 talentum-i, *a talent.*
 talis — qualis, *such — as.*
 tam — quam, *as well as — as; the — the.*
 tanti, *at so much.*
 tanti — quanti, *so much — as.*

tantus-a-um, *adv.*, so much.
 tantus — quantus, *so great — as*.
 tarditas-ātis, *f.* slowness.
 taurus-i, *m.* a bull.
 templum-i, *a* temple.
 tempus-ōris, *n.* time.
 terra-æ, *f.* the earth.
 tertius-a-um, *the third*.
 thymus-i, *thyme*.
 tot — quot, *so many — as*.
 totus-a-um, *adj.*, the whole.
 trahere-xi-ctum, *to draw*.
 trāsferre-tuli-latum, *irr.*, *to trans-*
fer.
 tres, tria, *three*.
 tribuere-ui-utum, *to attribute*.
 Troja-æ, *f.* city of Troy.
 tu, *pr.*, thou or you (131).
 tum — tum, *as well — as ; at one*
time — another ; now — now.
 turpis-e, *adj.*, base, disgraceful.
 turris-is, *m.* a tower.
 tuus-a-um, *thy, thine*.

U.

ultimus-a-um, *adj.*, the last, end
of.
 universus-a-um, *adj.*, whole of, en-
tire.
 unus-a-um, *adj.*, one (167).
 urbs, urbis, *f.* a city.
 usus-ūs, *m.* use.
 ut, *conj.*, that (with *subj.*).
 uti, *conj.*, that.
 uti, usus, *to use* (with *abl.*).
 utilis-e, *adj.*, useful.
 uxor-ōris, *f.* a wife.

V.

valere-ui-utum, *to be well, prevail*.
 validus-a-um, *adj.*, strong.
 vehementer, *adv.*, strongly.
 vehere, vxi-ctum, *to carry*.
 velocitas-ātis, *f.* swiftness.
 velox-ōcis, *adj.*, swift.
 venire, veni-ntum, *to come*.
 veritas-ātis, *f.* truth.
 verus-a-um, *adj.*, true.
 vsci, *to live upon, feed*.
 vesper-eris, *the evening*.
 vestis-is, *m.* a garment.
 vetare, *to forbid*.
 vicinus-a-um, *adj.*, neighbouring.
 vicissitudo-inis, *f.* change.
 victoria-æ, *f.* victory.
 videre, vidi, visum, *to see*.
 videri, visus, *to seem, be seen*.
 vigere-ui, *to flourish*.
 viginti, *indecl.*, twenty.
 vincere, vici, victum, *to conquer*.
 vinculum-i, *a bond*.
 vinum-i, *wine*.
 vir, viri, *m.* a man.
 virtus-ūtis, *f.* virtue.
 vis, *sing.*, force, violence (*pl.* vires,
strength).
 vita-æ, *f.* life.
 vitare, *to avoid*.
 vivere, vixi-ctum, *to live*.
 volo-ui, velle, *irr.*, *to be willing*.
 voluptas-ātis, *f.* pleasure.
 vos, *pr. pl.*, ye, or you (131).
 vulnerare, *to wound*.
 vulnus-eris, *n.* a wound.

INDEX II.

ENGLISH.

A.

- Able (to be), *posse*, irr. verb (267).
 act (to) *agere*, *egi*, *actum*.
 adjectives, declension of, 36.
 admire (to), *admirare*.
 adversity, *res adversæ* (both declined).
 advise, *monere-ut-illum*.
 affair, *res*, *rei*.
 afresh, *de integro*.
 Africa, *Africa-æ*.
 after
 — afterwards } *postea*.
 age, *ætas-atis*, *f*.
 all, *omnis-e*.
 also, *conj.*, *etiam*.
 always, *adv.*, *semper*.
 allowed fact (it is an), *constat*.
 am, *sum* (from *esse*).
 — ashamed, *imp. pudet*.
 — become } *feri* (from *fero*).
 — made }
 — weary, *tædet*.
 ambassador, *legatus-i*.
 amiable, *amabilis-e*.
 and, *conj.*, *et*, *que*, *ac*, *atque* (34).
 Anthony, *Antonius-i*.
 another, *alter-era-um*.
 any one, *aliquis-qua-quid*, or *-quod*.
 appear, *apparere-ui*.
 arms, *arma-ŕum*.
 army, *exercitus-ŭs*.
 as, *ut*.
 as little as possible, *quam minimi*.
 as many — as, *tot — quot*.
 as many as possible, *quam plurimi*.
 as much as possible, *quam maximi*.
 as well — as, *idem — idem, tam — quam, tum — tum*.
 Asia, *Asia-æ*.
 ask for, *rogare*.
 assistance, *auxilium-i*.
 at, *prep.*, *ad*, *apud* (with *acc.*)
 — a farthing, *teruncii*.
 — great price, *magni*.
 — hair, *pili*.
 — least, *minimi*.
 — less, *minoris*.
 — a little, *parci*.
 — lock of wool, *floci*.
 — more, *pluric*.
 — most, *plurimi*.
 — much, *magni*.
 — nothing, *nihilli*.
 — no weight, *non pensi*.
 — a nutshell, *nauci*.
 — penny, *assis*.
 — very much, *permagni*.
 at one time — at another, *tum — tum*.
 at that age, *id ætatis*.
 — time, *id temporis*.
 Athens, *Athenæ-ŭrum*.
 attribute, *tribuere-ui-ntum*.
 authority, *auctoritas-atis*, *f*.
 avoid, *vitare*.

B.

bad, *malus-a-um*.
 baggage, *impedimenta-orum*, n.
 base, *turpis-e*.
 be (to), *sum, fui, esse*.
 beat, *fero, tuli, latum*; *portare*.
 beautiful, *pulcher-chra-chrum*.
 becomes (it), *decet, convenit*, imp.
 becomes not (it), *dedecet*, imp.
 before, *prep., ante, præ, pro*.
 before — that, *prius — quam*.
 beginning, *exordium-i*; *initium-i*.
 behold, *aspicere-pexi-ctum*; *spec-tare*.
 best, *optimus-a-um* (sup. of *bonus*).
 better, *melior-oris* (comp. of *bonus*).
 blood, *sanguis-inis*, m.
 body, *corpus-uris*, n.
 bold, *ferox-ocis*.
 boldness, *audacia-e*.
 book, *liber-bri*, m.
 born, *natus-a-um*.
 boy, *puer-i*, m.
 break, *rumpere, rupi-ptum*.
 brief, *brevi-e*.
 bring, *fero, tuli, latum*; *vehere, vexi-ctum*; *conflure*.
 bring to pass, *impetrare*.
 Briton, *Britannus-i*.
 build, *ædificare*.
 bull, *taurus-i*.
 bury, *sepelire-ivi-ultum*.
 business, *negotium-i*.
 ——— of (omitted after *est*).
 but, *conj., sed, autem* (169).
 buy, *emere, emi, emtum & emptum*.
 by, *prep., a, ab, abs* (with *abl.*).
 by sight, *de facie*.

C.

Cæsar, *Cæsar-aris*.
 Caius, *Caius-i*.
 can, *possum* (27).
 care, *cura-e*.
 carry on, *gerere, gessi, gestum*.
 Carthage, *Carthāgo-ginis*.
 cause, *causa-e*.
 cement, *conglutinatio-onis*, f.

chain, *catena-e*.
 change, *vicissitudo-inis*.
 chariot, *currus-ūs*.
 children, *liberi-orum*, m.
 choose, *eligere-legi-lectum*.
 Christ, *Christus-i*.
 Christian, *Christianus-a-um*.
 Cicero, *Cicero-onis*.
 circus, *circus-i*, m.
 citizen, *civis-is*, m.
 city, *urbs, urbis*, f.
 clear (it is), *liquet*, imp.
 Cleopatra, *Cleopatra-e*.
 cloud, *nubes-is*, f.
 come, *venire, veni, ventum*.
 command, *imperium-i*.
 ——— (to) *imperare* (dat.).
 compose, *facere, feci, factum*.
 condition, *conditio-onis*.
 confess, *fateri*.
 conscience, *conscientia-e*.
 consul, *consul-is*.
 contest, *dimicatio-onis*, f.
 convenient, *commodus-a-um*.
 Corinth, *Corinthus-i*.
 corn, *frumentum-i*.
 cost, *stare, steti, statum* (dat.).
 could, *possum* (271).
 counsel, *consilium-i*.
 country, *patria-e*.
 ——— *rus, ruris* (opposed to *town*).
 courage, *animus-i*.
 crucified, *crucifixus-a-um*.
 cruelly, *adv., crudeliter*.
 crown, *corona-e*.
 cup, *poculum-i*.
 Curio, *Curio-onis*.

D.

daughter, *filia-e*.
 day, *dies-ei*, m. and f.
 death, *mors-rtis*, f.
 decemvirs, *decemviri-orum*, pl.
 defend, *defendere-ndi-nsum*.
 delay, *cunctatio-onis*, f.; *mora-e*, f.
 delight, *oblectare, delectare*.
 delightful (to the eye), *amænus-a-um*.

delightful (to the mind), *jucundus-a-um*.
 delights (it), *delectat*, imp.
 deny, *negare*.
 describe, *describere-psi-ptum*.
 despise, *spernere, spreui, spretum*.
 determine, *statuere-ui-utum*.
 difference does it make (what), *refert*, imp.
 difficult, *difficilis-e*.
 difficulty, *difficultas-atis*, f.
 diligence, *diligentia-æ*.
 direct, *prescribere-psi-ptum*.
 discharge, *fungi, functus*.
 discourse, *sermo-onis*.
 disgraceful, *turpis-e*.
 dismiss, *dimittere-misi-ssum*.
 divide, *describere-psi-ptum*.
 do, *agere, egi, actum*.
 — *facere, feci, factum* (particularly after *possum*).
 dog, *canis-ls*.
 double, *duplicare*.
 draw, *trahere-xi-ctum*.
 drive-out, *expellere-ulsi-ulsum*.
 during, *prep., inter (acc.)*.
 duty, *munus-eris*, n.
 duty of (omitted after *est*).

E.

earth, *terra-æ*.
 ease, *otium-i*.
 easily, *facile*, adv.
 eat, *edere, edi*.
 Egypt, *Egyptus-i*.
 empire, *imperium-i*.
 end of, *extremus-a-um* (in agreement).
 endeavour, *niti, nisus & nixus*.
 enemy, *hostis-is*, m.
 enjoy, *frui, fruius & fructus*.
 error, *error-oris*, m.
 esteem, *æstimare*.
 Europe, *Europa-æ*.
 evening, *vesper-eris*.
 evident (it is), *imp., liquet*.
 excellent, *adj., præstans-ntis*.
 excellently, *adv., excellentissime*.
 excepted, *exceptus-a-um*.

excuse, *excusare*.
 expedient (it is), *imp., expedit*.
 expel, *expellere-ulsi-ulsum*.
 extend, *proferre-tuli-latum*.

F.

fail, *desse (dat.)*.
 fair, *pulcher-chra-chrum*.
 father, *pater-tris*, m.
 fear, *metus-ls*.
 few, *pauci-æ-a*.
 few days ago, *paucis his diebus*.
 fight, *dimicare*.
 fill, *implere-evi-etum*.
 fire, *ignis-is*, m.
 fit, *idoneus-a-um*.
 fitting (it is), *convenit*.
 flee, *fugere-gi-gitum*.
 flesh, *caro, carnis*.
 fly, *fugere-gi-gitum*.
 folly, *stultitia-æ; ineptia-æ*.
 forasmuch — as, *tanti — quanti*.
 forbid, *vetare*.
 forces, *copiæ-ûrum*, f.
 forget, *oblivisci, oblitus*.
 former, *prior, prius*.
 — (opposed to latter), *hic, hæc, hoc*.
 foundation, *fundamentum-i*.
 four, *indecl., quatuor*.
 fourteen, *indecl., quatuor decem*.
 free, *liberare*.
 friend, *amicus-i*.
 friendly, *amicus-a-um*.
 from, *prep., a, ab, abs, e, ex* (with *abl.*).

G.

game, *ludus-i*.
 Gaul, *Gallia-æ*.
 genitive case, how known (2).
 — place of (3).
 genius, *genius-i*.
 gift, *munus-eris*.
 give, *dare, dedi, datum*.
 — satisfaction, *dare pœnas* (49).
 glory, *gloria-æ*, f.

to, *ire, ivi, itum*.
 God, *Deus-i*.
 gold, *aurum-i*.
 golden, *aureus-a-um*.
 good, *bonus-a-um*.
 govern, *imperare* (dat.), *gubernare*.
 grant, *concedere-essi-essum*.
 great, *magnus-a-um*.
 Greece, *Græcia-æ*.
 grief, *luctus-ûs*.
 grieves (it), *piget*.
 grievous, *gravis-e*.

H.

hand, *manus-ûs, f*.
 happen to be, *sum, esse*.
 happens (it), *imp., accidit, contingit, evenit*.
 happy, *beatus-a-um*.
 have, *habere-ui-itum*.
 he, *pr., is, ille*.
 he is his own master, *est sui juris*.
 hear, *audire-ivi-itum*.
 heaven, *cælum-i*.
 heavy, *gravis-e*.
 help, *subvenire-veni-ntum* (dat.).
 herb, *herba-æ*.
 his, her, { *suus-a-um* (when it refers to the *nom.* of the
 his own, { verb; if not) *ejus* (gen.
 her own, { of *is*).
 home, *domus-i*, and *ûs, f*.
 honesty, *honestas-âtis, f*.
 honey, *mel, mellis, n*.
 honour, *honor-ôris*.
 hope, *spes, spei*.
 horse, *equus-i*.
 hour, *hora-æ*.
 house, *domus-i* and *ûs, f*.
 how much, *quantus-a-um*.
 ——— (before comparatives),
quanto.
 human, *humanus-a-um*.

I.

ice, *glacies-ei, f*.

idle, *ignavus-a-um*.
 ignorance, *ignorantia, æ*.
 ignorant, *ignarus-a-um*.
 ignorant of, *nescire*.
 immortal, *immortalis-e*.
 importance to (it is of), *imp., interest, refert*.
 improves, *alere-ui-itum*.
 in, } *in*, denoting motion takes *acc*.
 into, } denoting rest takes *abl*.
 in the possession of, *potiri-itus*.
 infinitive, 6. Note 6.
 innocent, *innocens-ntis*.
 inside of, *intimus-a-um* (in agreement).
 interest of (it is the), *imp., interest, refert*.
 interior of, *interior-ôris* (in agreement).
 invite, *invitare*.
 iron, *ferrum-i* (adj. *ferreus-a-um*).
 is, *est* (part of *sum*).
 it, *id, illud* (neuter of *is, ille*).
 it is, *est*.
 Italy, *Italia-æ*.
 its (see *suus-a-um*).

J.

jesting, *jocus-i*.
 judge, *judex-icis*.
 ——— *judicare*.
 Jupiter, *Jupiter, Jovis*.
 justice, *justitia-æ*.

K.

kill, *interficere-feci-sectum*.
 kindness, *beneficium-i*.
 king, *rex, regis*.
 kingdom, *regnum-i*.
 know, *scire-ivi*.
 knowledge, *scientia*.
 know not, *nescire-ivi*.

L.

labour, *labor-ôris, m*.

language, *oratio-ōnis*.
 large, *magnus-a-um*.
 Latin, *Latinus-a-um*.
 latter (opposed to former), *ille-a-ud*.
 law, *lex, legis*.
 lawful (it is), *imp., licet*.
 lead, *ducere, duxi, ductum*.
 leader, *dux, ducis, m*.
 learn, *discere, didici*.
 leave, *excedere-essi-issum*.
 less, *minor-ōris* (comp. of *parvus*).
 lest, *ne, conj. (subj.)*.
 letter, *epistola-æ, litera-æ*.
 letters (literature), *litera-arum, pl*.
 liberty, *libertas-atis*.
 life, *vita-æ*.
 light, *lux-ucis*.
 lighten, *levare*.
 little, *parvus-a-um*.
 — *a, paululum, parum* (with *gen.*).
 live, *vivere-vixi-ctum*.
 live upon, *vesci*.
 long, *longus-a-um*.
 lord, *dominus-i*.
 lose, *amittere-isi-issum*.
 love, *amare*.

M.

magistrate, *magistratus-ūs*.
 make, *facere, feci, factum*.
 make atonement, *dare pœnas* (49).
 makes no difference (it), *imp., nihil refert*.
 man, *homo-inis* (mankind), *vir-iri*.
 manifest (it is), *liquet*.
 many, *multus-a-um*.
 mark of (omitted after *est*).
 marry (of a man), *ducere uxorem*.
 — (of a woman), *nubere-psi-plum* (dat.).
 master (of property), *dominus-i*.
 — (of slaves), *herus-i*.
 — (who teaches), *magister-iri*.
 material, *materies-ei*.

me, *pr., me* (acc. or abl. of *ego*, 131).
 messenger, *nuncius-i*.
 middle, *medius-a-um*.
 milk, *lac, lactis, n*.
 mind, *mens-ntis, f.* (intellect).
 — *animus-i, m.* (sentiments).
 mindful, *memor-ōris*.
 mine, *meus-a-um*.
 misbecomes (it), *imp., dedecet*.
 miserable, *misere-era-erum*.
 mitigate, *levare-ii-i, and ii-utum*.
 my, *meus-a-um*.
 money, *pecunia-æ*.
 — (coined), *nummus-i*.
 month, *mensis-is, m*.
 mood, *p. 0* (note 0).
 more, *adj., plus, pluris*.
 — of more, *pluris*.
 — *adv., magis*.
 — (sign of comparative degree).
 more — than, *magis — quam*.
 — willing, *male, malui, malle*.
 most, *plurimus-a-um* (sup. of *multus*).
 mother, *mater-iris*.
 mountain, *mons-ntis*.
 move, *movere, movi, motum*.
 much, *adv., multus-a-um*.
 — (before comparatives), *multo*.

N.

nation, *natio-ōnis, f*.
 nature, *natura-æ*.
 necessities, *commoda-orum, n. pl*.
 negligence, *negligentia-æ*.
 negligent, *negligens-ntis*.
 neighbouring, *vicinus-a-um*.
 neither — nor, *neque — neque, nec — nec*.
 never, *adv., nunquam*.
 new, *novus-a-um*.
 next, *adj., posterus-a-um, proximus-a-um*.
 no, *nilil* (with a *gen.* 130).
 no one, *nemo-inis*.
 —, none, *nullus-a-um, nequis-quæ-quid*.

nominative case, 2.
 nor, *neque, nec*.
 not, *adv.*, *non*, *ne* (with *imp.* and *subj.*).
 not only — but also, *non modo*
 — *sed etiam*.
 nothing, *nihil, nil* (indecl.).
 nourish, *alĕre-ui-ĭtum*.
 now, *conj.*, *nunc, jam*.
 now — now, *nunc* — *nunc, tum* —
 tum.
 number, *numerus-i*.

O.

obey, *parĕre-ui-ĭtum* (dat.).
 odium, *invidia-æ*.
 offend, *offendĕre-ndi-nsum*.
 off-hand, *ex tempore*.
 office, *munus-ĕris*.
 often, *adv.*, *sæpe*.
 old, *natus-a-um* (time following in
 acc. 217).
 — *inveteratus-a-um*.
 — age, *senectus-ūtis, f.*
 on purpose, *de industria*.
 one man — another, *alius* — *alius*.
 opinion, *sententia-æ*.
 opportunity, *facultas-ātis, f.*
 opposite, *ex adverso*.
 order, *jubĕre, jussi-ssum* (acc. and
 infin.).
 ought, *debĕre-ui*.
 — (it), *imp.*, *debet, oportet*.
 our, *noster-tra-trum*.
 overcome, *superare*.

P.

parent, *parens-ntis*.
 past (things), *præterita-ŏrum, pl.*
 peace, *pax-acis, f.*
 people, *populus-i*.
 perceive, *cernĕre-crevi-cretum*.
 perform, *fungi, functus*.
 permitted (it is), *imp.*, *licet*.
 persevere, *perseverare*.
 philosophy, *philosophia-æ, f.*
 pious, *pius-a-um*.

pities (it), *imp.*, *miseret, miserescit,*
 miseretur.
 pity, *miserĕri, miserĭtus* and *miser-*
 tus.
 place, *collocare*.
 play, *ludĕre, ludi, lusum*.
 pleases (it), *imp.*, *libet*.
 pleasure, *voluptas-ātis, f.*
 poet, *poeta-æ*.
 point out, *monstrare*.
 polish, *polire-ivi-ĭtum*.
 poor, *pauper-ĕris*.
 possess, *potiri-ĭtus* (gen., acc., or
 abl.).
 pound, *libra-æ*.
 power, *potestas-ātis, f.*
 praise, *laus, laudis, f.*
 — *laudare*.
 precept, *præcepta-ŏrum, pl.*
 precious, *carus-a-um*.
 prepare, *parare*.
 prescribe, *præscribĕre - psi - ptum*
 (dat.).
 present, *presens-ntis*.
 preserve, *conservare*.
 prevail, *valĕre-ui-ĭtum*.
 price, *pretium-i*.
 procure, *parare*.
 pronouns, 40.
 properly, *adv.*, *recte*.
 property of (it is the) (omitted
 after *est*).
 prosperity, *res secundæ* (both de-
 clined).
 provisions, *commeatus-ūs*.
 prudence, *prudencia-æ*.
 punish, *punire-ivi-ĭtum*.

Q.

queen, *regina-æ*.

R.

rather — than, *magis — quam, prius*
 — *quam*.
 read, *legĕre, legi, lectum*.
 ready, *promptus-a-um*.
 recal, *revocare*.

receive, *accipere-cēpi-ptum*.
reckon at a farthing, *facere teruncii*.
—— a hair, *facere pili, habere pili*.
—— a lock of wool, *astimare focci, facere focci*.
—— nothing, *ducere nihil, facere nihil, pendere nihil*.
—— no weight, *non ducere pēsi*.
—— a nutshell, *facere nauci, habere nauci*.
—— a penny, *astimare assis, facere assis*.
—— this, *facere hujus*.
reign (to), *imperare*.
remain, *manere-nsi-nsum*.
remaining, *adj. reliquus-a-um*.
remember, *memini, reminisci* (gen.).
repents (it), *imp., poenitet*.
reprove, *reprehendere-di-nsum*.
republic, *res-publica, rei-publica*.
request, *petere-iri & -ii-illum*.
rest of, *reliquus-a-um* (in agreement).
return, *redire-iri & -ii-illum*.
reward, *premium-i*.
ridiculous, *ridiculus-a-um*.
Roman, *Romanus-a-um*.
Rome, *Roma-æ*.
Romulus, *Romulus-i*.
ruler, *imperator-oris, rector-ōris*.

S.

sadness, *mœstitia-æ, f*.
safe, *salvus-a-um*.
sailor, *navia-æ, m*.
salute, *salutare*.
same, *idem, eadem, idem*.
same—as, *idem—qui*.
Samnite, *Samnis-itis*.
say, *dicere, dixi, dictum*.
science, *scientia-æ, f*.
Scipio, *Scipio-ōnis, m*.
scold, *rixari*.
sea, *mare-ris, n*.
see, *videre, vidi, visum; spectare*.
seek, *petere-iri & -ii-illum; querere-siti-situm*.

seem, }
seen (be), } *videri, visus*.
senator, *senator-ōris*.
send, *mittere, misi-issum*.
set free, *liberare*.
seven (indecl.), *septem*.
severity, *severitas-at-is, f*.
shames (it), *imp., pudet*.
she, *pr., illa, ea* (sem. of *ille & is*).
shed, *fundere, fudi, fusum*.
ship, *navis-is*.
show, *adhibere-ui-illum*.
silver, *argentum-i: adj., argenteus-a-um*.
slain, *pl., casus-a-um*.
slave, *servus-i*.
sleep, *dormire-iri-illum*.
so, *conj., ita, sic—tam* (before adjectives).
so great, } *tantus-a-um*—(before
so much, } comparatives) *tanto*.
so great—as, *tantus—quantus*.
so many—as, *tot—quot*.
Socrates, *Socrates-is*.
soldier, *miles-itis*.
some, *aliquis-qua-quid* or *-quod*.
something, *aliquid*.
some time (something of time),
aliquid temporis.
son, *filius-i*.
song, *musa-æ*.
sooner—than, *magis—quam, prius—quam*.
sow, *serere, sevi, satum*.
speak, *dicere, dixi, dictum*.
stain, *maculare*.
stand, *stare, steti, statum*.
standard, *vexillum-i*.
state, *res-publica, rei-publica; civitas-at-is, f*.
strength, *vires, rium* (pl. of *vis*).
strong, *validus-a-um*.
studious, *studiosus-a-um*.
study, *studium-i*.
suddenly, *ex improviso, de improviso*.
suits (it), *imp., convenit*.
sun, *sol-lis*.
support, *sustinere-ui-illum*.
suspicion, *suspicio-ōnis, f*.
sweet, *dulcis-æ*.

wicked, *adj.*, *improbus-a-um*.
 wild-beast, *fera-a*.
 will, be willing, *irr.*, *volo*, *voluti*,
velle.
 wine, *vinum-i*, *merum-i*.
 winter, *hyems-mis*.
 wisdom, *sapientia-a*.
 wise, *sapiens-ntis*.
 with, *prep.*, *cum* (with *abl.*).
 without, *prep.*, *sine* (with *abl.*)
 wood, *sylva-a*.
 work, *opus-ŕis*.
 world, *mundus-i*.
 worst, *peccimus-a-um* (sup. of *ma-*
lus).

wound, *vulnus-ŕis*, *n*.
 write, *scribere-pai-ptum*.

Y.

year, *annus-i*, *m*.
 yearly, *quotannis*.
 yield, yield up, *cedere-essi-essum*.
 you, *pr.*, *tu*, *pl. vos* (131).
 young, *juvenis-e*; *adolescens-ntis*.
 your, your own, *sing. tuus-a-um*,
pl. vester-tra-trum.
 youth, *adolescencia-a*, *juventus*
-ntis.

ERRATA.

. In the hurry of the press, these errors have inadvertently crept in,
 which the student is requested to correct.

Page 39, line	31, <i>for</i> exercitus, G. -i	<i>read</i> exercitus, G. -us.
— 40, —	6, — <i>dependere</i> , to depend,	— <i>defendere</i> , to defend.
— 56, —	12, — <i>puerum</i> ,	— <i>puero</i> .
— 65, last line,	— <i>pauper-era-erum</i> ,	— <i>pauper-eris</i> .
— 69, line 14,	— <i>dixisse</i> ,	— <i>duxisse</i> .
— 87, —	20, — <i>ignarus</i> ,	— <i>ignavus</i> .

